

F O R E I G N S E R V I C E I N S T I T U T E

L I N G A L A

BASIC COURSE



D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

L I N G A L A

BASIC COURSE



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

JAMES REDDEN, F. BONGO AND ASSOCIATES
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1963

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

LINGALA

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
CARLETON T. HODGE

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C., 20402 - Price \$1.50

P R E F A C E

Lingala is a trade language spoken along about a nine hundred mile stretch of the Congo River from Leopoldville upstream. Most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of other languages and use Lingala for communicating with persons outside their own language group.

The Lingala Basic Course is one of a series prepared by the Foreign Service Institute in its Special African Languages Program, coordinated by Earl W. Stevick. This series is being produced under an agreement with the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, under the National Defense Education Act.

The course in its present form is based on classroom experience with a group of Foreign Service Officers. It is designed to provide basic structures and vocabulary for the situations in which the foreigner is most likely to need Lingala.

The linguist in charge of the project has been James E. Redden. He was assisted by Frederic Bongo, Ernest Masakala, and Emil Zola, Language Instructors.

The tapes which accompany the text were prepared in the Foreign Service Institute Language Laboratory under the supervision of Gabriel Cordova.



Howard E. Sollenberger, Dean
School of Language and Area Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Contents	1v
Introduction	
Identification and location	x
Tone	x1
Symbol list	x11
Unit 1	
Dialogue: 'Greetings'	1
Note: 1. Verb prefixes	2
2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with'.....	3
3. Particle /na/ after /-zala/	3
4. Particle /na/ and /ya/: Possession	3
5. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Description	4
6. Response to yes-no questions	4
7. Intonation. Statement vs. Question	5
8. Nouns: Singular and Plural	6
9. /o/ before another vowel	7
10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use	7
Unit 2	
Dialogue: 'Do you speak Lingala?'	10
Note: 1. Negation: /tɛ́/	11
2. Verb: Base and affixes	12
3. Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective	12
4. Tense: Time Segments	12
5. Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations	14
6. Habitual Action: Continued State	15
7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Fu- ture	16
8. Spelling of long or double identical vowels	16

BASIC COURSE

9.	Vowel Harmony	16
10.	The Kituba Language	18
Unit 3		
Dialogue:	'Do you want to come to my house today?'	21
Note:	1. Infinitive prefix: /ko-/	23
	2. Purpose: Immediate Future	24
	3. Immediate Present	24
	4. Potential Future	25
	5. Imperative	25
	6. Spelling of long identical vowels	25
	7. Possessive Construction with Infinitive...	30
	8. Immediate Past of /-lía/	30
	9. Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases	30
Unit 4		
Dialogue:	'The Rapids'	31
Note:	1. Noun Classes	33
	2. Verb Subject Prefixes	35
	3. Nasal Homorganic with following Consonant	36
	4. Adjectives	43
	5. Prominence of Initial Sentence Position ..	44
Unit 5		
Dialogue:	'On the Way to Work	45
Note:	1. Nouns of deed or action, type 1	48
	2. Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns .	48
	3. Very Polite Questions and Requests	49
	4. Vowel Harmony in Noun Prefixes	49
	5. Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive	49
	6. Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals	50
	7. Telephone Numbers	50
	8. Plural of /mokáma/ 'hundred'	50
	9. 'Passive' Plural	55

LINGALA

10. Adjective Subordinate Clauses	55
11. /kosolola na/	55

Unit 6

Dialogue: 'At the Office'	56
Note: 1. Equational Sentences	60
2. Non-animate Independent Pronouns	60
3. Subjunctive	60
4. Applicative Suffix	61
5. Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/	61

Unit 7

Dialogue: 'At the Market'	66
Note: 1. Desiderative	69
2. Nominalization of Adjectives	69
3. Interrogative Relative Pronouns	74
4. Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses	74
5. /-tikala/ Plus Object	75
6. Please	75

Unit 8

Dialogue: 'At the Filling Station'	76
Note: 1. Vowel and Semi-vowel Elision	80
2. Reversive	80
3. Reversive Stative	80
4. Derived Stems Without Simple Stems	81
5. Causative	81
6. Degree of Immediate Past	81
7. Proverb Concordance	82
8. Non-applicative Verbs With Two Objects	87
9. Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative	87

Unit 9

Dialogue: 'The Houseboy'	88
Note: 1. Comparison of Intensity	91
2. Definite Condition	91

BASIC COURSE

3.	General Prohibitions	91
4.	Special Meanings of Derived Stems	92
5.	/tée/ Followed by /na/	92
6.	/libosó/ Plus Subjunctive	97
Unit 10		
Dialogue:	'The Telephone'	98
Note: 1.	Hypothetical Supposition	106
2.	'Passive' Plural	106
3.	Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses	106
Unit 11		
Dialogue:	'At the Doctor's'	107
Note: 1.	Emphatic /wápi/	111
2.	Spelling of /óo/	111
Unit 12		
Dialogue:	'Mosquitoes'	117
Note: 1.	Nouns From Derived Stems	121
2.	Agent Nouns	122
3.	/wa/; /ya/	122
4.	Literary Use of /ndé/ of Mark Future	122
5.	Hyperbole with /...mayéle té/	122
6.	Norms of Deed or Action, Type 2	122
Unit 13		
Dialogue:	'The Workshop'	130
Note: 1.	Passive	134
2.	Ingressive Stative: Reciprocal	135
3.	/mikóló mikomí mosíka/	135
4.	Instrument Nouns, Type 1	136
5.	Locative Nouns, Type 1	136
6.	Avoidance of Base Repetition	136
7.	Instrument Nouns, Type 2	136
8.	Instrument Nouns, Type 3	138
9.	Expletive	138

Unit 14		
Dialogue:	'Elections'	143
Note:	1. Miscellaneous Nouns	146
	2. /se/	147
	3. Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object	152
	4. Lovanium University	153
	5. Leopoldville II	153
Unit 15		
Dialogue:	'Military Service'	154
Note:	1. Intermediate Past	157
	2. Distant Past	157
	3. Comparison of Intensity	158
	4. Comparison of Degree	158
	5. Inversion of Subject and Verb	158
Unit 16		
Dialogue:	'Building a Road'	164
Note:	1. Subject With Two Verbs	169
	2. Immediate Past of /-longwa/	169
	3. Indefinite Condition	169
Unit 17		
Dialogue:	'Traffic Control'	175
Unit 18		
Dialogue:	'A New House'	184
Note:	1. /-zala ya/	188
	2. Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject	189
Unit 19		
Dialogue:	'Leaving For The Store'	195
Note:	1. Reflexive	199
	2. Compound Agent Nouns	203
	3. Kinship Terminology	204

BASIC COURSE

Unit 20	
Dialogue:	'A Student Visa' 205
Note:	1. /ífo/ plus Subjunctive 208
	2. Reduplication for Intensity 208
	3. Wishes, Intentions, Plans 208
Unit 21	
Dialogue:	'A Lost Pencil' 214
Note:	1. Double Spatial Relationships 217
	2. Partitive 218
Unit 22	
Dialogue:	'The Bus to Kimwenza' 223
Note:	1. /longwá áwa tíí na Kimwénza/ 226
	2. /nsima ya mikolò mísátu/ 226
Unit 23	
Dialogue:	'A Wedding' 232
Note:	1. Suggestive Cohortative 236
	2. Distant Indefinite Future 241
Unit 24	
Dialogue:	'The Seasons' 242
Glossary 252

Introduction

Lingala is a lingua franca or trade language spoken in the areas on both sides of the Congo River from Leopoldville up to about a hundred miles from Stanleyville. Lingala, usually called Mangala by Africans, was originally the language of the Bamangala, a Bantu tribe that has almost completely disappeared. Most speakers of Lingala are native speakers of another language and use Lingala as a means of communicating with other tribal groups and to a lesser extent with Europeans; however, there is a growing number of younger people, especially in urban centers such as Leopoldville, whose native language is Lingala. Since Lingala is spoken by so many people of varied linguistic backgrounds, it is inevitable that the language as spoken in different areas should vary to a greater or lesser degree.

The speaker on whose speech these materials are based is from Leopoldville, a child of parents who could not speak each other's language and who consequently always spoke Lingala with each other and with their children. Lingala has been a written language for quite some time, but unfortunately written or 'literary' Lingala is different in many ways from Lingala as it is nearly always spoken by Africans. One can say without hesitation that literary Lingala is an invention of Europeans who have tried to 'improve' on the language, because Africans who speak Lingala fluently have trouble understanding literary Lingala even when it is spoken. This manual is based strictly on Lingala as spoken by the person described above.

The transcription system used in this manual is the orthography regularly used to write Lingala plus diacritic markings to indicate tone, which is not usually written, and to make it clear how a word or segment is pronounced in cases where the student may have difficulty interpreting the orthography. Some words have been respelled, but this is indicated in the footnotes the first time the respelling occurs.

Lingala contains many words borrowed both from African and European languages. It is often difficult, if not impossible, to recognize words borrowed from other Bantu languages. Since most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of some other language, words from other languages are constantly used in Lingala. A number of Arabic words have come in via Swahili. Portuguese and French words have been borrowed for several centuries, and many such words have been so fully assimilated into the sound system that they too are very hard to recognize. A number of English words also have entered. French words are freely used in everyday speech in a more or less unassimilated form. Those persons who speak French fluently also try to pronounce French words as they would be in French when these words are used in Lingala. Assimilated words occurring in this text are spelled as pronounced in Lingala, and the first time they occur, the standard French spelling is given in parentheses, e.g., /letá/ (l'état), 'government'. Words recently borrowed and not assimilated into the Lingala sound system are given the standard French spelling in the Lingala text. Unassimilated French words usually have a high tone on the final syllable. The diacritic marks on French words are NOT tone marks, but they are the same as those regularly used in French spelling.

Lingala, like almost all the languages spoken south of the Sahara, is a tone language. Each syllable has its own tone. Tone is as much an integral part of a syllable as vowels and consonants. Words are distinguished by tone, e.g., /ngáí/, 'I', 'me' (a low and two highs), and /ngai/, 'scur(ness)', 'bitter(ness)' (three lows). Lingala has two contrastive or phonemic tones: high /´/, low / / (unmarked). However, there are many speakers of Lingala who use a stress system instead of tones. Most speakers who use a stress system stress the penultimate syllable. Because of these speakers and because tone has a smaller phonemic yield, i.e., plays a smaller role, in Lingala than in the great majority of African languages, one can obviously communicate in Lingala without using its tone system. But the majority of speakers of the

language do use tone, including the speaker used as the model for this manual,

Sentence intonation, e.g., use of pitch to distinguish statements and questions, is also used in Lingala. This is described in Note 1.7. In reference to the notes in this manual, the first numeral refers to the unit and the second numeral refers to the note.

In the four column chart given below, column I gives the orthography except for /ɛ/ and /ɔ/ (See footnote 3 below), column II gives the phonemes, column III gives the phonetic symbols, and column IV is an approximation of the sound using American English and French sounds for comparison.

Symbol	Phoneme	Phonetics	Approximation
p	/p/	[p]	<u>p</u> in
t	/t/	[t̥]	<u>t</u> in
k	/k/	[k]	<u>c</u> ome
kp ⁴ .	/kp/	[kp, 'kp]	simultaneous <u>k</u> and <u>p</u>
b	/b/	[b]	<u>b</u> e
d	/d/	[d̥]	<u>d</u> o
g	/g/	[g]	<u>g</u> o
gb ⁴ .	/gb/	[gb, 'gb]	simultaneous <u>g</u> and <u>b</u>
f	/f/	[f]	<u>f</u> ee
s	/s/	[s̥]	<u>s</u> ee
h	/h/	[h]	<u>h</u> e
z	/z/	[z̥, ʃ, dz̥, dʃ]	<u>z</u> ero
m	/m/	[m]	<u>m</u> e
n	/n/	[n̥, ŋ]	<u>n</u> o, si <u>ng</u>
ny	/ɲ /	[ɲ̥ ỹ]	<u>y</u> e pronounced through the nose
ngb ⁴ .	/ŋ /	[ŋ]	simultaneous <u>m</u> and <u>ɲ</u>
l	/l/	[l̥]	<u>l</u> et
w	/w/	[w]	<u>w</u> e

BASIC COURSE

y	/y/	[y]	<u>y</u> es
v ¹ .	/v/	[v]	<u>v</u> ine
r ¹ .	/r/	[r, y, x]	French ga <u>r</u> e
i	/i/	[i [^] , ɨ]	be <u>a</u> t ²
e	/e/	[ɪ, e]	ba <u>i</u> t ²
e ³	/ɛ/	[ɛ, ɛe [^]]	be <u>t</u>
a	/a/	[a, a]	bo <u>t</u> tle
o ³	/o/	[o]	bo <u>u</u> ght
o	/o/	[o, u]	bo <u>a</u> t ²
u	/u/	[u [^] , u]	bo <u>o</u> t ²
.	/#/	step down in pitch on preceding syllable and pause	
,	/ /	pause	
?	//	greater interval between high and low than for /#/ and usually stress on the preceding high	

A number of special symbols are also used as explained below.

() Enclosed Lingala elements are usually elided at conversation speed; or enclosed English elements are given for clarity of meaning.

/ / In the chart above, this symbol means Lingala phonemics; elsewhere, it means the symbolization used in this grammar.

// // Ordinary Lingala orthography. Spaces between words to mark word boundaries are the same as those used in the orthography except as given in the footnotes.

NOTES

1. /v/ and /r/ are used only in unassimilated loan words.
2. There is no y- or w-offglide with Lingala vowels in contrast to English vowels which sound somewhat the same.
3. /ɛ̃/ is usually /e//, but sometimes // ε //, /ɔ̃/ is usually //o//, but sometimes // ɔ // .
4. /kp/, /gb/, and /ngb/ are very rare. This manual contains only one word with /gb/ and no words with /kp/ or /ngb/. They are usually explosive, but some speakers are reported to use implosives.

Unit 1

Basic Sentences

-A-

mbóté

greetings, good morning/
afternoon/evening

1. Mbóté.

Hello.

-B-

éé

yes

2. Éé, mbóté.

Hello.

-A-

-zala

to be, exist, live, sit,
dwell

ozalí

you (sg.) are

malámu

good, well, fine

3. Ozalí malámu?

How are you?

-B-

nazalí

I am

ná

and, with, as well as, even

yó, yóó

you (sg.)

4. Éé, nazalí malámu. Ná yó?

I'm fine. And you?

-A-

5. Éé, nazalí malámu. I'm fine.

-B-

mama, ba-	mother
mwana, ^o bána	child
na	and, with; of, having; consisting of; at, along, by

6. Mamá na bána azalí malámu? How is your wife?

-A-

7. Éé, azalí malámu. She's fine.

-B-

mpé	and, also, likewise
-----	---------------------

8. Ná bána mpé? And the children?

-A-

bangó	they, them, those
bánsɔ	all

9. Éé, bangó bánsɔ bazalí malámu. They are all fine.

NOTES

1.1. Verb prefixes.

Verbs have one of several prefixes to mark: (1) person (first, second, third), (2) number (singular, plural), and (3) other grammatical categories which will be discussed later. Note the underlined prefixes in the chart below.

ANIMATE SUBJECT PREFIXES OF VERBS

	<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
1st person	<u>n</u> azalí I am		<u>t</u> ozalí	we are
2nd person	<u>o</u> zalí you (sg.) are		<u>b</u> ozalí	you (pl.) are
3rd person	<u>a</u> zalí he, she, it is		<u>b</u> azalí	they are

1.2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with'

At conversation speed /ná/ is usually /na/, i.e., low-toned, but for emphasis or if there is ambiguity, it is /ná/, i.e., high-toned, and is stressed, i.e., louder than adjacent syllables, e.g., /azalí ná mwána/, 'he is with the child', or /tatá ná mamá ná bána/, 'the father and also the mother and the children as well'. In a question /ná/ is always high.

1.3. Particle /na/ after /-zala/

The verb /-zala/ plus /na/ has a number of meanings from the English point of view. Most commonly /-zala na/ translates 'has' or 'have', e.g., /azalí na mwána/, 'he has a child', but a number of other meanings are possible, e.g., 'he is with the child', 'he is looking after the child'.

1.4. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Possession

One of the uses of the particles /na/ and /ya/ is to mark possession. The noun preceding the particle is the possessed, and the noun or pronoun following the particle is the possessor. If the possessor is a noun, /ya/ occurs, e.g., /mwána ya mobalí/, 'the child of the man/male/husband'. If the possessor is a pronoun, /na/ usually occurs, e.g., /mwána na ngái/, 'my child', 'child of me'. /ya/ does occur occasionally before pronouns in possessive

constructions. If the possessor is a pronoun, the independent form of the pronoun occurs. See the chart below.

INDEPENDENT PRONOUNS

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1st person	ngáí	bísú
2nd person	yó, yóó	bínú
3rd person	yé, yee	bangó

1.5. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Description

In general if /na/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as 'and', 'in addition'; but there are a few specialized constructions like /mamá na bána/, 'woman with children, 'wife', 'lady'. This construction is used as a polite term of address if it is known to the speaker that the woman being addressed has children. Or it is used as a polite term of reference to the wife of the man being addressed. If it is not known to the speaker whether the couple has children, one would use /mwási na yó/, 'your woman/wife/female', as a term of reference and /mamá/ 'mother/lady/madam', as a term of address. Both terms are polite, but /mamá na bána/ and /mamá/ establish greater rapport if used. Likewise /tatá na bána/, 'husband/man/gentleman', and /tatá/, 'father/gentleman/sir', occur in this type situation when referring to a man.

In general if /ya/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as, 'of', 'belonging to'; but it may also indicate description or quality, e.g. /mwána ya mobáli/, 'boy', 'male child', 'son'. Compare note 1.4.

1.6. Response to yes-no questions.

In answering a yes-no question, it is necessary to say /éé/, 'yes', or /té/, 'no', even though the question is answered with a

sentence, e.g., /Ozalı malámu?/, 'Are you well?', is answered by /éé, nazalı malámu./, 'Yes, I am well.'

1.7. Intonation: Statement vs. Question

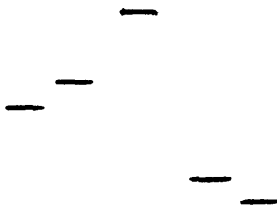
Statements and questions are distinguished by intonation, i.e., they have different pitch patterns or sentence melodies. In general, the pitch level of a sentence becomes gradually lower. The interval or amount of pitch difference between high and low is greater in a question than in a statement, especially between the last high and the lows in the preceding syllable and in the following syllable, but in a long sentence the interval between high and low is no greater in the first several syllables than the interval in a statement.

INTONATION

Statement

He likes meat.

Alingí nyama.



Question

Does he like meat?

Alingí nyama?



Though the pitch does fall over a sentence, the second of two low tones is slightly higher if followed by a high tone. The last syllable of a statement is conspicuously lower in pitch and usually in amplitude, but at the end of a question only a low tone is lower. A final high in a statement is usually just a little lower than a preceding low. A final high in a question is much higher than a preceding low; a final high after a high is approximately on the same level as or a little higher than the preceding high. A final high in a question may be either level or high-rising

INTONATION

StatementQuestion

He likes manioc leaves.

Does he like manioc leaves?

Alingí mpõndú.

Alingí mpõndú?



1.8. Nouns: Singular and Plural

Nouns are marked for singular and plural by prefixes. Most nouns referring to persons have /mo-/ in the singular and /ba-/ in the plural, e.g., /mótu/, 'person', 'human', and /bátu/, 'people'. Kinship terms usually have no prefix in the singular, e.g., /tatá/, 'father', but do have /ba-/ in the plural, as in /batatá/, 'fathers'. The plural prefix is listed after a noun the first time the noun

occurs. If the plural is irregular, the entire plural form is given, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', /^obána/, 'children'. Irregular plurals are marked with the symbol ^o to distinguish them from alternate forms of the singular. The plural should be learned along with the vocabulary item. The plural of some (especially abstract) nouns rarely occurs. Rare plurals are given in parentheses, e.g., /bolái, (ma-)/, 'length', 'depth', 'height'. Also some nouns occur only in the plural.

1.9. /o/ before another vowel.

/o/ before another vowel is regularly /w/, e.g., /*moána/, is /mwána/, 'child'.

1.10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use

In doing the drills, the teacher is to give the student the first sentence. After having the student repeat the first sentence, give him the underlined portion of the next sentence and have the student give back the new sentence composed of the underlined portion plus the required parts of the preceding sentence. See model below.

MODEL DRILL

Teacher: Nazalí malámu.

Student: Nazalí malámu.

Teacher: Ozalí

Student: Ozalí malámu.

LEXICAL DRILL 1

1. Nazalí malámu. I am fine.
2. Ozalí malámu. You (sg.) are fine.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 3. <u>Azali</u> malámu. | He/she is fine. |
| 4. <u>Tozali</u> malámu. | We are fine. |
| 5. <u>Bozali</u> malámu. | You (pl.) are fine. |
| 6. <u>Bazali</u> malámu. | They are fine. |

LEXICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1. <u>Azali</u> malámu? | How is he? |
| 2. <u>Mwana na yó</u> azali malámu? | How is your child? |
| 3. <u>Mwasi na ye</u> azali malámu? | How is his wife? |
| 4. <u>Mobali na ye</u> azali malámu? | How is her husband? |
| 5. <u>Tata na binu</u> azali malámu? | How is your father? |
| 6. <u>Mama na bangó</u> azali malámu? | How is their mother? |
| 7. <u>Bana na yó</u> bazali malámu? | How are your children? |
| 8. <u>Bamama na bisu</u> bazali malámu? | How are our mothers? |
| 9. <u>Bangó banso</u> bazali malámu? | Are they all all right? |
| 10. <u>Mama na bana</u> azali malámu. | How is your wife? |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Answer affirmatively:

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Ozali malámu? | Éé, nazali malámu. |
| 2. Azali malámu? | Éé, azali malámu. |
| 3. Bozali malámu? | Éé, tozali malámu. |
| 4. Bazali malámu? | Éé, bazali malámu. |
| 5. Bana na yó bazali malámu? | Éé, bana na ngái bazali malámu. |
| 6. Tata na yó azali malámu? | Éé, tata na ngái azali malámu. |

7. Mamá na bangó azalí malámu? Éé, mamá na bangó azalí malámu.
 8. Mwána na yé azalí malámu? Éé, mwána na yé azalí malámu.
 9. Bána na ngái bazalí malámu? Éé, bána na yó bazalí malámu.
 10. Mwási na yó azalí malámu? Éé, mwási na ngái azalí malámu.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Azalí mwána. He is young.
 2. Nazalí na mwána. I have a child.
 3. Nazalí na bána. I have children.
 4. Bazalí ná bána. They are with the children.
 5. Bazalí ná mamá na ngái. They are with my mother.
 6. Tozalí na mamá na ngái. We are with my mother.
 7. Tozalí na mwána na yó. We are taking care of your child.
 8. Mamá azalí na mwána na yó. Mother has your child.
 9. Mama azalí na bangó bánso. Mother has all of them.
 10. Bozalí na bangó bánso. You have all of them.

UNIT 2

Basic Sentences

-A-

-loba

to speak, tell, say

1. Olobaka Lingála?

Do you speak Lingala?

-B-

-yéba

to know, be acquainted with;
may, be allowed to

nainu

still, yet

tɛ

not, no

2. Nayébi nainu malámu tɛ.

I don't know it very well yet.

-A-

Français

French

3. Olobaka Français mpé?

Do you speak French too?

-B-

kási

but

Anglais

English

4. Éɛ, kási nayébi Anglais tɛ.

Yes, but I don't speak English.

-A-

ndínga, n-

language

nini

what, which

ndáko, n-

house

5. Olobaka ndínga nini na
ndáko?What language do you speak at
home?

-B-

letá (l'état)	government, state
Kitúba, Kikóngo ya	the Kituba language
Letá, Kutúba	

6. Tolobaka Lingála ná Kitúba. We speak Lingala and Kituba.

-A-

-yékola	to study, learn
---------	-----------------

7. Naákoyékola Lingála. I'm studying Lingala.

-B-

8. Malámu. That's fine.

NOTES

2.1 Negation: /tɛ́/

The negative particle /tɛ́/ follows whatever it modifies. If it modifies a sentence, it occurs at the end of the sentence, e.g., /nayébí Anglais tɛ́/, 'I don't speak English.'

2.2 Verb: Base and Affixes

olobaka

nayébí

These may be diagrammed:

<u>Subject Prefix</u>	<u>Stem</u>		<u>Aspect Suffix</u>
	<u>Base</u>	<u>Verbal Extension</u>	
o-	lob	-ak	-a
na-	yéb		-í

The base and aspect suffix occur in every verb form. Prefixes and verbal extensions may or may not be present. The tone of the first stem syllable is fixed, i.e., always high or always low; but the tone of succeeding syllables of the stem is the same as the tone of the aspect suffix.

2.3 Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective

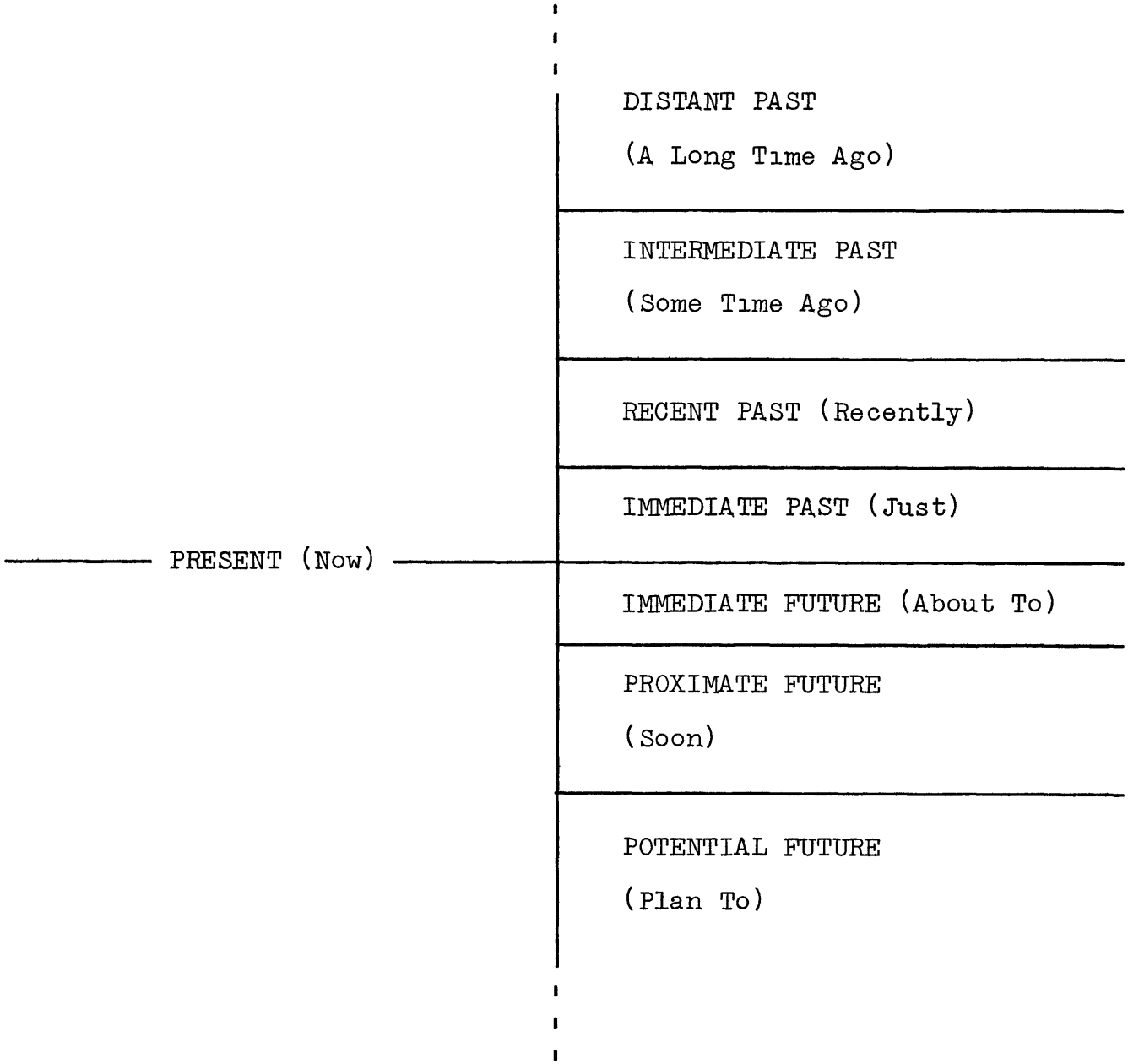
There are two aspect suffixes: the perfective and imperfective. The tone of the aspect suffix is high in the past and imperative, but low in the non-past and infinitive.

The perfective suffix /-í/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating a completed action or state arrived at by the time referred to in the sentence. Since /-í/ is always a past, it always has high tone.

The imperfective suffix /-a/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating an action or state continued through an indefinite period of time. Since the imperfective /-a/ occurs with the past, present, and future, it has high or low tone as described above.

2.4 Tense: Time Segments

In addition to dividing time into past, present, and future, Lingala segments time in a series of steps from the present. The borderline between the various degrees of distance from the present is relative, i.e., cannot be stated exactly in hours or days. The various tenses will be studied in the following lessons. Compare the English approximations of Lingala time divisions in the diagram below.



LINGALA TIME DIVISION

2.5 Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations

The perfective suffix /-í/ marks (1) the immediate past, (2) permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics, and (3) permanent or present locations. (1) The immediate past most often refers to some time earlier the same day as the moment of speaking or some time the preceding day, but it may refer to any time in the last three or four or more days if the speaker considers the event to have just taken place. (2) Permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics are such things as sex, nationality, name, profession, and marital state. (3) A permanent location, is a geographic or natural location; a present location is the present temporary location of anything movable. Compare the examples below.

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. nazalí | I have been, have become, have reached the state of, have been created as, i.e., I am, am in the act or state of, am by nature. |
| Nazalí mobáli. | I am a man. |
| Nazalí áwa. | I am here. |
| Nazalí koloba. | I am speaking. |
| 2. nayébí | I have become acquainted with, i.e., I know. |
| Nayébí Lingála. | I speak Lingala. |
| Nayébí yé. | I know him. |

- | | | |
|----|----------------|---|
| 3. | nasálí | I have done, I did, have just done, recently did. |
| | Nasálí yangó. | I made it. |
| | Nasálí mosálá. | I did the work. |

2.6 Habitual Action: Continued State

The combination of the verbal extension /-ak-/ and the imperfective suffix marks the habitual present, which indicates a regular activity or usual part of the subject's behavior over a long, indefinite period, including the present. Compare the examples below.

- | | | |
|----|--------------------|---|
| 1. | nazalaka | I am regularly, always, habitually |
| | Nazalaka na ndáko. | I'm always home. |
| | Nazalaka ná yé. | I'm always with him. |
| 2. | nalobaka | I regularly speak. |
| | Nalobaka Lingála. | I (always) speak Lingala, i.e., Lingala is a habitual activity of mine. |
| 3. | nasálaka | I regularly do. |
| | Nasálaka bilámba. | I (habitually) make clothes, i.e., I am a tailor. |

2.7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Future

A long or double subject-pronoun vowel with a high tone on the second element plus (or minus) a /ko-/ prefix to the verb stem, which

in turn has the imperfective suffix, marks (1) the temporary habitual present and/or (2) the proximate future. The /ko-/ prefix is optional, but it nearly always occurs. (1) A temporary habitual present indicates an activity which is a regular part of the subject's behavior for a rather short temporary period including the present; (2) a proximate future is something that will take place soon, e.g., /Naákoyékola Lingála/, 'I'm studying Lingala', 'At the present time, one of my regular activities is studying Lingala', or 'I'm going to be studying Lingala in the near future'.

2.8 Spelling of long or double identical vowels.

The Lingala orthography does not usually indicate long or double vowels of the same quality, e.g., /naákoyékola/ is usually //nakoyekola//. But since this spelling is the same as that of the potential future (See Note 3.2), sometimes an acute accent is added to the vowel of the subject pronoun, e.g., /naákoyékola/ is sometimes //nákoyekola//. Those cases when the regular orthography writes a long vowel will be indicated in the notes.

2.9 Vowel Harmony

There are certain limitation as to which vowels can precede or follow other vowels. These limitations are called vowel harmony. There are two series of vowels: primary and secondary.

primary vowels	i e a o u
secondary vowels	ɛ ɔ (a)

/a/ is often a secondary vowel in verbal extensions and in the imperfective suffix, but /a/ is almost always primary in a base. The relationship of these two series is perhaps easier to see in a vowel triangle.

		Front	Back	
	High	i	u	} Primary
Mid	High Mid	e	o	
	Low Mid	ɛ	ɔ	Secondary
	Low		a	Primary (-Secondary)

Vowel Harmony Rules

I. If the first syllable of a stem contains a primary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be primary, i.e., high mid, e.g., /naáyékola/, 'I'm studying.'

II. If the first syllable of a stem contains a secondary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be secondary, i.e., low mid, unless a high vowel occurs after the secondary vowel, in which case succeeding mid vowels will be primary, e.g., /natékéli/, 'I sold for (someone)', but /nabongíséli/, 'I repaired for (someone)'.

III. When a secondary vowel occurs in a syllable before /a/ in either habitual extension /-ak-/ or the imperfective suffix /-a/, the same secondary vowel as in the preceding syllable also usually occurs in the extension and the imperfective suffix, e.g., /nakɛ̀ndɛ̀kɛ̀/, 'I go', is the more common form, but /nakɛ̀ndaka/, 'I go', is also fairly common. If both the habitual extension and the imperfective suffix occur, both the extension and the suffix have the same vowel, i.e., /*nakɛ̀ndɛ̀ka/ does not occur.

IV. A low mid vowel immediately followed by a high vowel is often replaced by a high mid vowel, e.g., /omóní/, 'I see' is the more common form, but /omóni/, 'I see' is fairly common.

In bases ending in a vowel, a form with two primary vowels occurs, e.g., /nakeí/, 'I went', not /*nakei/. If /a/ occurs in

this environment, it acts as a secondary vowel, e.g., /nayéí/, 'I came', not /*nayáí/.

V. Verb prefixes are not influenced by vowel harmony.

VI. Some noun prefixes are subject to vowel harmony influence of the first syllable of the base in the same ways as described above for vowels following the initial base syllable. This will be further studied in Note 4.3.

2.10 The Kituba Language

Kituba is a lingua franca spoken to the west and south of Lingala. Many speakers of Lingala also know Kituba, and conversely. Lingala and Kituba share many words and grammatical structures. Kituba is also called Kikóngo ya Letá; but sometimes Kituba is restricted to mean that dialect of the language spoken in the eastern or Kwango-Kwilu region, and Kikóngo ya Letá restricted to mean that of the western or lower Congo region.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL I

-yóka

to hear, listen, feel
understand

moké, m1-

small, thin; a little;
a bit, few

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Olobaka Lingála? | Do you speak Lingala? |
| 2. Olobaka <u>Français mpé</u> ? | Do you speak French too? |
| 3. <u>Nayébi</u> Français mpé. | I speak French too. |
| 4. <u>Nayébi</u> <u>Lingála moké</u> . | I speak a little Lingala. |
| 5. <u>Bayébi</u> Lingála moké. | They speak a little Lingala. |

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 6. Bayébi <u>malámu</u> tẹ́. | They don't speak it very well. |
| 7. <u>Toyóki yó</u> malámu tẹ́. | We didn't understand you very well. |
| 8. Toyóki yó <u>moké</u> . | We understood you partly. |
| 9. <u>Boyébi Anglais</u> moké. | You (pl.) speak a little English. |
| 10. Boyébi <u>malámu</u> . | You (pl.) know it very well. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. Nazalí na ndáko ya ngái. | I'm at home. |
| 2. Nazalí na ndáko ya <u>bangó</u> . | I'm at their house. |
| 3. <u>Azali mwána</u> ya bangó. | He is their child. |
| 4. Azali mwána <u>malámu</u> . | He's a good child. |
| 5. <u>Toyébi Lingála</u> malámu. | We speak Lingala well. |
| 6. Toyébi Lingála <u>moké</u> . | We speak a little Lingala. |
| 7. <u>Ozali mwána</u> moké. | You are a small child. |
| 8. Ozali mwána <u>ya mamá ya ngái</u> . | You are a child of my mother. |
| 9. <u>Azali tata</u> ya mamá ya ngái. | He is my mother's father. |
| 10. Azali tata <u>ya ngái</u> . | He is my father. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Naákoyékola Lingála. | I'm studying Lingala. |
| 2. Naákoyékola <u>ndinga na binú</u> . | I'm learning your language. |
| 3. <u>Nayébi</u> ndinga na binú. | I know your language. |
| 4. Nayébi <u>Anglais tẹ́</u> . | I don't speak English. |
| 5. <u>Ayébi</u> Anglais tẹ́. | He doesn't know English. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Ayébi <u>yó</u> . | He knows you. |
| 7. <u>Bayóki</u> yó. | They hear you. |
| 8. Bayóki <u>malámu</u> . | They feel fine. (i.e., They have recovered.) |
| 9. <u>Oyébi</u> Lingála malámu. | You speak Lingala well. |
| 10. Oyébi Lingála <u>na Français</u> . | You speak Lingala and French. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Nayébi yé malámu t _é . | I don't know him very well. |
| 2. Nayébi <u>mwána na yé ya mobáli</u> . | I know his son. |
| 3. <u>Azali</u> mwána na yé ya mobáli. | He is her son. |
| 4. Azali <u>na ndáko na ngái</u> . | He is at my house. |
| 5. <u>Tolobaka Kitúba</u> na ndáko na ngái. | We speak Kituba at my house. |
| 6. Tolabaka Kitúba <u>na Français mpé</u> . | We speak Kituba and French also. |
| 7. <u>Bayébi</u> Kitúba na Français mpé. | They know Kituba and French also. |
| 8. Bayébi <u>nainu malámu t_é</u> . | They don't know (how) very well. |
| 9. Bayébi <u>Anglais moké</u> . | I speak a little English. |
| 10. <u>Azali mwána</u> moké. | He is a small child. |

Unit 3

Basic Sentences

-A-

-linga

to want, like; be almost
on the point of

-yáa

to come, become

lẹlọ

today

1. Olingí koyáa lẹlọ na
ndáko na ngái?

Do you want to come to my house
today?

-B-

sókọ, sọkí

if

-zwá

to get, receive, find, meet

ntangú, ntangó

time, hour, clock, sun

2. Sókọ nazwí ntángu nakoyáa.

If I get time, I will come. If
nothing prevents me, I'll come.

-A-

-lía

to eat

3. Olingí kolía níni?

What do you like to eat?

-B-

nsósó

chicken

lọsọ

rice

4. Nsósó ná lọsọ.

Chicken and rice.

-A-

5. Ná níni?

And what else?

-B-

- | | |
|--------|-------------------------------------|
| mbísi | fish |
| mpondú | manioc leaves (used as a vegetable) |
| nyama | meat |
6. Mbísi, mpondú ná nyama. Fish, manioc leaves with meat.

-A-

- | | |
|--------|-----------------------|
| -lámba | to cook, prepare food |
|--------|-----------------------|
7. Malámu, nakolámba. Good, I'll fix it.
- | | |
|-------|--------------------------|
| -mele | to drink, suck up, smoke |
|-------|--------------------------|
8. Omela níni? What would you like to drink?

-B-

- | | |
|---------|----------------------|
| vínu | wine |
| masanga | wine, beer |
| mbíla | palm tree, palm nuts |
9. Vínu na masanga ya mbíla. Some wine and palm wine.

-A-

- | | |
|-------|---|
| -koka | to be able, can, be sufficient, be more than a given number |
|-------|---|
- | | |
|---------|---------------------|
| -yáa ná | to bring, come with |
|---------|---------------------|
10. Okokí koyáa ná mwási na yó tẹ? Can't you bring your wife?

-B-

- | | |
|--------|-----|
| míbalé | two |
|--------|-----|
11. Tokoyáa bisú míbalé. We'll both come.

- A-
12. Kẹ̀ndẹ́ malámu. Goodbye.
- B-
13. Ná yọ́ mpé. Goodbye.
14. Pésá mamá na bána mbòtẹ́. Say hello to your wife for me.
- A-
15. Pésá mpé bána mbòtẹ́. And remember me to your children.
- B-
16. Melesí. Thanks.

NOTES

3.1 Infinitive prefix: /ko-/

Verbal nouns, here called infinitives, are marked by the prefix /ko-/ added to the imperfective verb stem, e.g., /kosála/, 'to do', 'doing'. This prefix may be added to any imperfective verb stem, so that, for example, there is also a form /kosálaka/, 'to do habitually'. Infinitives are invariable and, like other nouns, may be subjects of verbs, e.g., /kosála ezalí malámu/, 'It's good to work', 'Work is a good thing'. (The verb prefix /e-/ is described in Note 4.2.)

Infinitives often occur after a main verb much like a complementary infinitive in English, and the meaning of such a construction is usually obvious, e.g., /okokí koyáa/, 'you are able to come'. But sometimes the meaning is difficult for a speaker of English to guess. In such cases a footnote is given.

A verb of motion plus an infinitive indicates purpose, e.g., /ayéí kolía/, 'he has come to eat', 'he has come in order to eat'.

3.2 Purpose: Immediate Future.

/-linga/ followed by an infinitive expresses (1) purpose and/or (2) immediate future. (1) Purpose is a desire or a want; (2) the immediate future is something about to happen, e.g., /olingí koyáa/, 'you want to come,' or 'you are about to come', 'you will come very soon'. Compare also /balingí koloba Lingála/, 'They want to speak Lingala', or 'They will (soon be able to) speak Lingala, (but they can't speak it now)', 'They have nearly reached the state of being able to speak Lingala'. Sometimes 'almost ready to' is a good translation.

3.3 Immediate Present

/-zali/ plus an infinitive marks the immediate present, i.e., something taking place at the moment of speaking, e.g., /nazalí kolía/, 'I am eating', 'I am in the act/process/state of eating at this moment'.

Though the temporary habitual present (See Note 2.8) and the immediate present both usually translate 'I am... ing' and though both may often be used to describe the same event, they often contrast, e.g., /naákolía/, 'I'm eating', i.e., 'I'm studying (or whatever) but from time to time I eat something even though at this moment I may not have food in my mouth', /nazalí kolía/, 'I am eating something right at this moment'.

The immediate future (See Note 3.2) and the immediate present are both used to describe something which is going to happen very soon. If the immediate present is used, the event is so near that it is considered to have already begun, e.g., /azalí kokɛndɛ/, 'He is going', 'He is already starting to leave', /alingí kokɛndɛ/, 'He's about to go', 'He's going to leave in just a little bit'.

3.4 Potential Future

The prefix /-ko-/ plus the imperfective suffix with low tone form the potential future. The potential future may be any time in the future, but it is rather indefinite, i.e., it is much less sure to take place than the immediate and proximate futures, e.g., /nakoyáa/, 'I will come', 'I plan/intend to come'.

3.5 Imperative.

The imperative (commands) singular consists of the verb stem plus a high tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /Kɛ̀ndé/, 'Go', 'Go away'.

The imperative plural consists of the prefix /bo-/ plus the imperative singular, e.g., /bosáalá/, 'work' (speaking to more than one person). However, the imperative singular is often used when addressing more than one person.

/-yáa/ is irregular in the imperative, e.g., /yáká/, 'Come', /yákáká/, 'Come regularly'.

3.6 Spelling of long identical vowels

/koyáa/ is //koya//. Compare Note 2.9

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Nalingí kolía. | I want to eat. |
| 2. Nalingí <u>mbísi</u> . | I like fish. |
| 3. Nalingí <u>kolía mbísi</u> . | I want to eat fish. |
| 4. <u>Nalingaka</u> kolía mbísi. | I like to eat fish. |
| 5. Nalingaka <u>mpondú ná nyama</u> . | I often eat manioc leaves with meat. |
| 6. <u>Nakolámba</u> mpondú ná nyama. | I'll cook manioc leaves with meat. |
| 7. Nakolámba <u>nsósó ná lósó</u> . | I'll fix chicken and rice. |

8. Balingí nsósó ná lóso. They like chicken and rice.
 9. Balingí koloba Lingála. They are going to speak Lingala.
 10. Azali koloba Lingála. He's speaking (in) Lingala.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Tozali koyékola Lingála. We are studying Lingala.
 2. Tozali bána na yé. We are his children.
 3. Bozali bána na yé. You are his children.
 4. Bozali kokendé. You are leaving.
 5. Alingi kokendé. He wants to leave.
 6. Alingi koyáa ná mwási na yé. He wants to come with his wife.
 7. Akoki koyáa ná mwási na yé. He can come with his wife.
 8. Akoki kolía na ngái. He can eat with me.
 9. Balingí kolía na ngái. They want to eat with me.
 10. Balingí kokendé leló. They want to leave today.

Question and Answer Drill 1

Answer the questions with a full sentence as directed by the underlined cues.

1. Olingí koyáa leló na ndáko na ngái? Do you want to come to my house today?
Ée, nalingí koyáa leló na ndáko na yó. Yes, I want to come to your house.
 2. Okozwá ntángu ya koyáa na ndáko na ngái? Will you have time to come to my house?
Ée, nakozwá ntángu ya koyáa na ndáko na yó. Yes, I'll have time to come to your house.

3. Bolingí kolía níní? What do you (pl.) want to eat?
 Tolingí kolía nsósó ná
lósó. We want chicken and rice.
4. Balámbaka níní? What do they usually prepare?
 Balámbaka mbísi, mpondú
ná nyama. They usually prepare fish and
 manioc leaves with meat.
5. Baákolámba níní? What are they going to prepare?
 Baákolámba mbísi, mpondú
ná nyama. They are going to prepare fish
 and manioc leaves with meat.
6. Akokí koyáa ná bána na Can't he bring his children?
 yé tẹ?
Tẹ, akokí koyáa ná bána na No, he can't bring his children.
 yé tẹ.
7. Bokokí kokẹndẹ bínú míbalé tẹ. Can't you both go?
Tẹ, tokokí kokẹndẹ bísú No, we both can't go.
 míbalé tẹ.
8. Ozalí na níní na ndáko? What do you have in the house?
 Nazalí na vínu ná masanga
ya mbíla na ndáko. I have wine and palm wine in
 the house.
9. Omẹlaka níní? What do you usually drink?
 Namẹlaka masanga ya mbíla. I usually drink palm wine.
10. Bolobaka ndínga níní? What language do you usually
 speak?
 Tolobaka Lingála. We usually speak Lingala.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Okayáa lẹlọ́ na ndáko
na ngáí. | You will come to my house
tomorrow. |
| 2. Okoyáa <u>kolía nsósó na
nyama.</u> | You will come to eat chicken
and meat. |
| 3. <u>Nakolámba nsósó na nyama.</u> | I will prepare chicken and meat. |
| 4. Nakolámba <u>sókó nazwí ntángu.</u> | I will fix (some) if I get time. |
| 5. <u>Nakokende lẹlọ́ sókó nazwí
ntángu.</u> | I'll go today if I have time. |
| 6. Nakokende lẹlọ́ <u>na ndáko na yé.</u> | I'll go to his house today. |
| 7. <u>Bakozala na ndáko na yé.</u> | They will be at his house. |
| 8. Bakozala <u>ná mwási na ngáí.</u> | They will be with my wife. |
| 9. <u>Nakokende komẹle ná mwási
na ngáí.</u> | I'm going out drinking with
my wife. |
| 10. Nakokende komẹle <u>vinu na
masanga ya mbila.</u> | I'm going out to drink wine
and beer. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Alíaka mpondú ná nyama. | He always eats manioc leaves
and meat. |
| 2. <u>Aléí mpondú ná nyama.</u> | He ate manioc leaves and meat. |
| 3. Aléí <u>nsósó.</u> | He ate (the) chicken. |
| 4. <u>Bokokí kozwá nsósó.</u> | You (pl.) can have (the) chicken. |
| 5. Bokokí kozwá <u>mbísi ná nyama.</u> | You (pl.) can have (the) fish
and also (the) meat. |
| 6. <u>Balingí mbísi ná nyama.</u> | They want (the) fish and (the)
meat too. |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 7. Balingí <u>kokęndę na ndáko.</u> | They are about to go home. |
| 8. <u>Tozalı</u> kokęndę na ndáko. | We are on the way home. |
| 9. Tozalı <u>kolámba nyama.</u> | We are cooking the meat. |
| 10. <u>Ayébí</u> kolámba nyama. | She knows how to fix the meat. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mamá aákolámba nsósó ná lósọ. | Mother is going to fix chicken and rice. |
| 2. Mamá <u>akolámba</u> nsósó ná lósọ. | Mother will fix chicken and rice. |
| 3. Mamá <u>alámbí</u> nsósó ná lósọ. | Mother fixed chicken and rice. |
| 4. Mamá <u>alámbaka</u> nsósó ná lósọ. | Mother fixes chicken and rice. quite often. |
| 5. Mamá <u>azalı kolámba</u> nsósó ná lósọ. | Mother is fixing the chicken and rice now. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli akokęndę lẹlọ. | My son will leave today. |
| 2. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli <u>akeí</u> lẹlọ. | My son left today. |
| 3. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli <u>aákokęndę</u> lẹlọ. | My son is leaving (later) today. |
| 4. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli <u>azalı kokęndę</u> lẹlọ. | My son is leaving (right away) today. |
| 5. Mwána na ngái ya mobáli <u>akęndaka ntángo nyónsọ.</u> | My son regularly leaves at this time. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Kɛndé malámu. | Goodby. |
| 2. Kɛndé ndáko. | Go home. Go to the house. |
| 3. Kɛndé kolámba nyama. | Go fix the meat. |
| 4. Kɛndé koyékola. | Go study. |
| 5. Kɛndé kozwá lóso. | Go get some rice. |

3.7 Possessive Construction with Infinitive.

ntángu ya koyáa

When an infinitive is the possessor noun in a possessive construction, the infinitive is descriptive and usually translates as (1) a complimentary infinitive, (2) 'for' plus a gerund, or (3) present participle, e.g., /ntángu ya kolía/, (1) 'time to eat', (2) 'time for eating', or (3) 'eating time'.

3.8 Immediate Past of /-líá/

/-líá/ has an irregular immediate past /-léí/.

3.9 Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases

mwána na ngái ya mobáli

It both a possessive and a descriptive phrase modify a noun, the possessive phrase comes first, as in the phrase above, 'my son'.

Unit 4

Basic Sentences

-A-

díi	friend, comrade
móno, móna	to see, feel
'chutes', (ba-)	rapids
bóongó	thus, so
-tɛlɛmɛ	to stop, stand up; insist
wápi	where

1. Díi, nalingí komóna Say, I'd like to see the rapids.
bachutes, bóongó nakokí Where can I go to get a good
kotɛlɛmɛ wápi? view of them?

-B-

2. Oyébi ndáko ya 'President' Do you know the President's
na Binza? house at Binza?

-A-

3. Éɛ, nayébi. Yes, I do.

-B-

-mata	to go up, climb, rise
mwáa	small, little, few
ngómbá, n-	hill, mountain
esíká, b1-	place

4. Okomata mwáa ngómbá esíká ya You climb the hill where the
'monument' ya 'Stanley' monument to Stanley is.
ezali.

-A-

nsima, n-

back, rear, later,
afterwards

na nsima

then, next

5. Ná nsima?

And then what?

-B-

lobókọ, libókọ, ma-

arm, sleeve, side

mwási, ba-

left, female

libángá, ma-

rock, stone

loléngé, ndéngé, n-

sort, kind; manner, way;
quality; character, makeup6. Na nsima okomona na lobókọ
ya mwási mabángá ndéngé
na ndéngé.Then you will see all sorts of
rocks on the left.

-A-

melesí (merci)

thanks

tikala

to stay, remain

7. Melesí, tikálá malámu.

Thanks, goodbye.

-B-

8. Këndé malámu.

Goodbye.

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Kangá ndáko.	Close the door.
Kangá mɔ̀nɔ̀kɔ̀ ya ndáko.	Close the door.
Fungóla lɪnɪnɪsa.	Open the window.
Fungóla búuku.	Open your book (s).
Lobá lɪsúsu.	Say it again.
Lobá nsɪma na ngáí.	Repeat after me.
Yóká malámu.	Listen carefully.
Zóngísá na motúna óyo.	Answer the question.

-kanga	to stop, cease; close, shut, take, grasp, wrap up
mɔ̀nɔ̀kɔ̀, mɪ-	mouth, opening; word, message
-fungola	to open, release, unlock
lɪnɪnɪsa, ma-	window
lɪsúsu	again, anew; besides, moreover
búuku, (ba-)	book
-zóngisa	to send/give back, answer
motúna, mɪ-	question
óyo	this, these, the

4.1 Noun Classes

Lingala nouns are divided into several classes, which are distinguished by class prefixes. The MO-BA and the Ø-BA classes were introduced in Unit 1. Besides kinship terms, the Ø-BA class contains most recently-borrowed words, e.g., /chutes/, /bachutes/, 'rapids'. The plural prefix appears after each noun the first

time it occurs. All the nouns beginning with /mo-/ in the previous lessons belong to the MO-BA class except /mobáli/ and /moké/, which are MO-MI class. All the nouns in previous lessons beginning with a nasal consonant (m or n) plus another consonant are N-N class. There is now a rather strong tendency among younger people to put nouns of the N-N class into the \emptyset -BA class, i.e., instead of /ndáko/, 'house' and/or 'houses', some young people say /ndáko/, 'house' and /bandáko/, 'houses', but the N-N pattern is still the dominant one for this class of noun.

The various noun classes are listed below. Note which singulars go with which plurals.

NOUN CLASSES

PREFIX CLASS	SINGULAR		PLURAL
MO-BA	motu	(person)	batu
\emptyset -BA	tata	(father)	batata
MO-MI	monéne	(big)	minéne
LI-MA	libángá	(rock)	mabángá
BO-MA	bobína	(dance)	mabína
LO-MA	lokolo	(leg, foot)	makolo
E-BI	ebale	(river)	bibale
LO-N	lopété	(ring)	mpété
MO-N	mosúkí	(hair)	nsúkí
N-N	nzeté	(tree)	nzeté
KO	kobóta	(to give birth to)	-----

4.2 Verb Subject Prefixes

In Unit 1 the verb prefixes for animate subjects were introduced. Animate is here restricted to men and animals. In the third person animate/inanimate is distinguished. In the singular, the verb prefix is /a-/ if the subject is animate, but /e-/ if the subject is inanimate. In the plural, the verb prefix is /ba-/ if the subject is animate, but is the same as the prefix on the noun if the subject is inanimate with the exception that the inanimate N-N class has the plural verb prefix /mɪ-/, e.g., /ndáko mɪzalı.../, 'the houses are..'.
 If there is an adjective after a plural noun, the prefix to the verb is in concord with the adjective prefix, e.g., /mabángá/
 mɪnéŋɛ mɪzalı.../, 'the big rocks are...'

VERB SUBJECT PREFIXES

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st	na-	to-
2 nd	o-	bo-
3rd animate	a-	ba-
3rd inanimate	e-	mɪ-
	e-	ma-
	e-	bɪ-

CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

PERSON	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	SUBJECT	VERB	SUBJECT	VERB
3rd animate	mo-	a-	ba-	ba-
	∅-	a-	ba-	ba-
3rd inanimate	mo-	e-	m1-	m1-
	li-	e-	ma-	ma-
	bo-	e-	ma-	ma-
	lo-	e-	ma-	ma-
	lo-	e-	n-	m1-
	e-	e-	b1-	b1-
	n-	e-	n-	m1-
	ko-	e-	---	---

CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

1. Mwána azalí... The child is...
2. Bána bazalí... The children are...
3. Mobáli azalí... The man is...
4. Mibáli bazalí... The men are...
5. Libángá ezalí... The rock is...
6. Mabángá mazalí... The rocks are...
7. Mótuka ezalí... The automobile is...

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 8. <u>M</u> ítuka <u>m</u> ízalí... | The automobiles are... |
| 9. <u>E</u> lókò <u>e</u> zalí... | The thing is... |
| 10. <u>B</u> ilókò <u>b</u> ízalí... | The things are... |
| 11. <u>N</u> dáko <u>e</u> zalí... | The house is... |
| 12. <u>N</u> dáko <u>m</u> ízalí... | The houses are... |

In some dialects of Lingala, especially up-river from Leopoldville, the verb prefix in the third person in both the singular and the plural is the same as that of the prefix of the inanimate noun subject except that the N-N class has /e-/ sg. and /-ɪ/ pl. for the verb suffix. Written Lingala usually follows up-river Lingala in this respect.

4.3 Nasal Homorganic with Following Consonant.

loléngé, ndéngé

Only certain combinations of nasal consonant plus another consonant occur. A nasal consonant is homorganic with the following consonant, i.e., it is made in the same mouth position as the following consonant.

	NASAL	BEFORE CONSONANT
labial	m	p, b, f
dental	n	t, d, s, z
velar	ŋ	k, g

/n/ plus /l/ is /nd-/, e.g., /loléngé/, 'kind', /ndéndé/, 'kinds'. However, the plural form of this word is often used as a collective singular.

/n/ plus /y/ is /nz/, e.g., /n-/ plus /-yémbò/ is /nzémbò/, 'song'. What is written /ny/ in the orthography as in /nyama/,

'meat', represents a single sound, an [ɲ], i.e., a palatal nasal. This sound can be approximated by pronouncing 'y' through the nose. /nz/ is a sequence of two sounds, /n/ plus /z/.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

mobáli, mɪ-

right, male

libosó, ma-

front; before

1. Tolingí kokɛndɛ komɔna bachutes. We want to go see the rapids.
2. Bazalí kokɛndɛ komɔna bachutes. They are about to see the rapids.
3. Bazalí komata ngómbá. They are clinging the mountain.
4. Boyébi komata ngómbá. You are acquainted with mountain climbing.
5. Boyébi ndáko ya 'President'. You know where the President's house is.
6. Namóni ndáko ya 'President'. I saw the President's house.
7. Namóni tatá ya bangó. I saw their father.
8. Natikáli na tatá ya bangó. I'm remaining with their father.
9. Natikáli na ndáko. I'm staying home.
10. Azalí libosó na ndáko. He's in front of the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Tatá na ngái alingí komɔna ndáko. My father is coming to see the house right away.
2. Mamá na bisú alingí komɔna ndáko. Our mother is coming to see the house right away.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Mamá na bisú <u>akotíkala na ndáko.</u> | Our mother will stay in the house. |
| 4. <u>Mwána moké</u> akotíkala na ndáko. | The small child will stay in the house. |
| 5. Mwána moké <u>azalí na libángá.</u> | The small child has a rock. |
| 6. <u>Mobáli na yé</u> azalí na libángá. | Her husband has a rock. |
| 7. Mobáli na yé <u>azalí libosó na ndáko.</u> | Her husband is in front of the house. |
| 8. <u>Bána ya yó</u> bazalí libosó na ndáko. | Your children are in front of the house. |
| 9. Bána na yó <u>bazalí kolámba nsósó.</u> | Your children are cooking chicken. |
| 10. <u>Bási</u> bazalí kolámba nsósó. | The women are cooking chicken. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nazalí na ndáko. | I'm at home. |
| 2. <u>Nazalí na</u> ndáko. | I have a house. |
| 3. Nazalí na <u>bána míbalé.</u> | I have two children. |
| 4. <u>Azalí mamá ya</u> bána míbalé. | She is the mother of two children. |
| 5. Azalí mamá ya <u>tatá na yó.</u> | She is your father's mother. |
| 6. <u>Leló tomóní</u> tatá na yó. | Today we saw your father. |
| 7. Leló tomóní <u>mabángá ndéngé na ndéngé.</u> | Today we saw all kinds of rocks. |
| 8. <u>Na nsima okomóna na lobóko ya mwási</u> mabángá ndéngé. na ndéngé. | Then you will see all sorts of rocks on the left. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 9. Na nsima okomona na loboko
ya mwasi ndako ya bangó. | Then you will see their house
on the left. |
| 10. <u>Na liboso okomona na loboko</u>
<u>ya mobali</u> ndako ya bangó. | Before that you will see their
house on the right. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Mwana moke akotikala na
ndako.

Bana miké bakotikala na
ndako. | The small child will stay in
the house.

The small children will stay
in the houses. |
| 2. Tata na ngái alingi komona
ndako.

Batata na bisú balingi
komona ndako. | My father is coming to see the
house.

Our fathers are coming to see
the houses. |
| 3. Mobali na ye azali na
libanga.

Mibali na bangó bazali
na mabanga. | Her husband has a rock.

Their husbands have rocks. |
| 4. Mama na yo akolamba nyama.

Bamama na binu bakolamba
nyama. | Your mother will prepare the
meat.

Your mothers will prepare the
meats. |
| 5. Azali mwana malamu.

Bazali bana malamu. | She is a good child.

They are good children. |
| 6. Azali tata ya ngái.

Bazali batata ya bisú. | He is our father.

They are our fathers. |

7. Nayóki mwána na yé ya
mobáli té.
Toyóki bána na bangó ya
mibáli té.
I didn't understand his son.
We didn't understand their
sons.
8. Balobaka ndínga níní na
Leó?
Balobaka ndínga níní na
Leó?
What language is spoken at
Leopoldville?
What languages are spoken at
Leopoldville?
9. Mamá na ngái aákotíkala
na mwána.
Bamamá na bísú baákotíkala
na bána.
My mother is staying with the
child.
Our mothers are staying with
the children.
10. Libángá moké ezalí libosó
ya ndáko.
Mabángá miké mizalí libosó
ya ndáko.
There is a little rock in
front of the house.
There are little stones in
front of the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

1. Mobáli azalí na lopété moké.
Mibáli bazalí na mpété miké.
The man has a little ring.
The men have little rings.
2. Libángá monéne ezalí na
esíká óyo.
Mabángá minéne mizalí na
esíká óyo.
There is a big rock at this
place.
There are big rocks at this
place.
3. Mwási azalí libosó ya libángá
monéne.
The woman is in front of a
big rock.

- | | | |
|-----|--|--|
| | Bási bazalí libosó ya
mabángá minéne. | The women are in front of big
rocks. |
| 4. | Mwána azalí na lɔbókɔ́ ya
mwási ya ndáko.
Bána bazalí na lɔbókɔ́ ya
mwási ya ndáko. | The child is on the left side
of the house.
The children are on the left
side of the house. |
| 5. | Motu akofúnga linínisa.
Batu bakofúnga manínisa. | Someone will close the window.
Some people will close the
windows. |
| 6. | Mwána ya mobáli aákozóngisa
na motúna.
Bána ya mibáli baákozóngisa
na mitúna. | The boy is asking a question.
The boys are asking questions. |
| 7. | Mwási ayókaka mobáli na yé.
Bási bayókaka mibáli na
bangó. | The woman obeys her husband.
The women obey their husbands. |
| 8. | Nzeté ezalí nsima ya ndáko.
Nzeté mizalí nsima ya ndáko. | There is a tree behind the
house.
There are trees behind the
house(s). |
| 9. | Mwána mwási akeí na bobína.
Bána básí bakeí na mabína. | The girl went to a dance.
The girls went to dances. |
| 10. | Motu akangí búuku.
Batu bakangí babúuku. | Someone has closed (his) book.
Some people have closed (their)
books. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mwási na ngái ayébi ndáko. | My wife knows where the house is. |
| 2. Mwási na ngái <u>azalí na ndáko mibalé.</u> | My wife owns two houses. |
| 3. <u>Tatá na bísú</u> azalí na ndáko mibalé. | Our father has two houses. |
| 4. Tatá na bísú <u>azalí na lobókó ya mobáli ya ndáko.</u> | Our father is on the right side of the house. |
| 5. <u>Bána na binú</u> bazalí na lobókó ya mobáli ya ndáko. | Your children are on the right side of the house. |
| 6. Bána na binú <u>balingí kolía na nsima na ndáko.</u> | Your children want to eat behind the house. |
| 7. <u>Batu nyónso</u> balingí kolía na nsima na ndáko. | Everyone wants to eat in back of the house. |
| 8. Batu nyónso <u>batélemí libosó na ndáko.</u> | Everyone is standing in front of the house. |
| 9. <u>Bána miké</u> batélemí libosó na ndáko. | The small children have stopped before the house. |
| 10. Bána miké <u>bazalí komata mwáa ngómbá.</u> | The little children are climbing the hill. |

4.4 Adjectives

Lingala has only a few adjectives, but is in the process of developing several new ones. An adjective follows the noun it modifies, e.g., /mwána moké/, 'a small child'. New adjectival constructions are formed by /ya/, /mwána ya mobáli/, 'male child', 'son'. Many such constructions now regularly occur without /ya/, so that /mwána mobáli/, 'male child', 'son', is now the preferred form for many younger persons.

Nearly all adjectives are invariable, but there are a few which are marked for singular and plural, such as /móké/, /miké/.

4.5 Prominence of Initial Sentence Position.

For emphasis an element of a sentence may be placed initially, e.g., /Lɛlɔ́ tomóní tatá na yó/, 'Today we saw your father'. This gives an additional bit of emphasis to /lɛlɔ́/, 'today', in contrast to some other day.

- ntóngó, n- morning, forenoon
6. Mosálá ya bisú ebandaka na Our work starts at seven in the
ngonga ya nsambo na morning.
ntóngó
- A-
7. Nakokí koyéba esíká Might I know where you work?
osálaka té?
- B-
- 'secrétaire' secretary
'ambassade' embassy
8. Ngái, nazalí secrétaire Me, I'm a secretary at the
na ambassade ya Amérique. American Embassy.
- A-
- áwa here
mòkòlò, m- day
9. Oyákí áwa mòkòlò níni? When did you arrive?
- B-
- mpòsò week, Saturday; salary, pay
mísáto, mísátu three
10. Óyo mpòsò ya mísátu. This is my third week.
- A-
- solola to talk, converse, speak,
tell
mpó, mpóo, m- thing, affair, matter;
because, on account of
mbángo, mbángu, m- speed, swiftness

11. Malámu, mọkọlọ níni toko-
solola malámu, mpóo,
naákokọndẹ mbángu na
mosálá. Well then, we can have a chat
one of these days; but now
I'm in a hurry to get to
work.

-B-

-pésa	to give, provide with
numeró (numéro)	number
-yébisa	advise, inform, make known

12. Pésa ngáí numeró ya
telephone na yó, mpó
náyébisa yó mọkọlọ. Give me your telephone number
so I'll have it.

-A-

13. Numeró quatre-vingts
trois, cinquante deux. 8352.

NUMERALS

mọkó	one
míbalé	two
mísáto, mísátu	three
mínei	four
mítáno, mítánu	five
motóbá	six
nsambo	seven
mwambe, mwambi	eight
libwá	nine

zóm1	ten
zóm1 na mókó	eleven
zóm1 na míbalé	twelve
ntúkú míbalé	twenty
ntúkú míbalé na mókó	twenty-one
ntúkú mísáto	thirty
ntúkú mísáto na míbalé	thirty-two
ntúkú mínei	forty
nkámá, monkámá, mokámá, (m1-)	hundred
nkáma mítáno	five hundred
nkóto	thousand
nkóto nsambo	seven thousand

NOTES

5.1 Nouns of deed or action, type 1.

A limited number of nouns meaning the act or deed of the verb base are formed by the MO-MI prefix class plus a high-tone /-á/ suffix, e.g., /mosáalá/, 'work', 'job', 'occupation'.

5.2 Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns .

Ngai, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEÁC.

In Unit 1 the independent pronouns were introduced with the tones they have in possessive constructions. All independent pronouns except /ngái/ are invariable; but when an independent or emphatic subject /ngái/ is /ngái/, as in /Ngai, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEÁC/, 'Me, I'm a mechanic at CEGEÁC.'

5.3 Very Polite Questions and Requests

Nakokí koyéba esíká osálaka tẹ?

To ask a question or make a request in a very polite way, /-kokí/ prefaces the question or request, which is expressed with an infinitive, and /tẹ/ occurs at the very end, e.g., /Nakokí koyéba esíká osálalaka tẹ?/, 'Might I know where you work?', 'Would you be so kind as to tell me where you work?'

5.4 Vowel harmony in noun prefixes.

mọkọlọ

When a noun prefix containing a mid vowel occurs before a secondary vowel in the first syllable of a base, the prefix vowel is for many younger speakers low mid, e.g., /mọkọlọ/, 'day', except the infinitive which has a primary vowel in the prefix, e.g., /komónọ/, 'to see'.

5.5 Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive

okákí áwa mọkọlọ níní?

The combination of the extension /-ák-/ and the perfective suffix /-í/ forms the recent past. The recent past most often refers to something which took place no later than the day before yesterday but within the last month; however, if the speaker considers the event to have happened recently, the recent past may refer to a few months ago, or in some cases even a few years ago. Likewise, it may refer to a time later than the day before yesterday if the speaker wants to imply recentness but not something which has just taken place. In the example given above from the dialogue, the questioner implies that he knows that the American has arrived only recently in Leopoldville, e.g., /Oyákí áwa mọkọlọ níní?/, 'When did you arrive?', 'You have arrived only recently, haven't you?'

For verbs of state or existence, the recent past implies a state existing in or arrived at in the recent past, e.g., /nayébákí/, 'I knew', 'I came to know', or /ekokákí/, 'it was enough', 'it came to be sufficient'.

The recent past often indicates something which happened before something else in the past and thus translates like an English past perfect, e.g., /aliákí ntángu na nayákí/, 'He had eaten before I came'.

The past progressive is composed of the recent past of /-zala/ plus an infinitive, e.g., /nazalákí kolía/, 'I was eating'. The past progressive indicates something that was going on or continuing to happen for an indefinite short or temporary period, whereas the recent past indicates a point in or definite block of time, e.g., /nazalákí kolía ntángu ayákí/ 'I was eating when he came.'

5.6 Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

mpóşo ya mísátu

Cardinal numerals like other adjectives follow the noun they modify, e.g., /mpóşo mísátu/, 'three weeks'; but unlike many adjectives, /ya/ may not be inserted between a numeral and the noun it modifies without a change of meaning because /ya/ plus a numeral is an ordinal, e.g., /mpóşo ya mísáto/, 'the third week'.

5.7 Telephone Numbers

Telephone numbers are given in French in two-digit numbers, e.g., 'quatre-vingts trois, cinquante deux', '8352'.

5.8 Plural of /mokámá/, 'hundred'

/mikámá/, 'hundreds', is used only in /mikámá na mikámá/, 'hundreds and hundreds'; elsewhere, the singular form is used, e.g., /mokámá nsambo/, 'seven hundred'.

Other numerals do not have plural form.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Azalí kokendé wápi? | Where is he going? |
| 2. <u>Otíki secrétaire</u> wápi? | Where did you drop off the secretary? |
| 3. <u>Bakendéki</u> wápi? | Where did they go? |
| 4. <u>Akei</u> wápi? | Where is he going? Where has he just gone? |
| 5. <u>Bozalaka</u> wápi? | Where do you live? |
| 6. <u>Baliaka</u> wápi? | Where do you usually eat? |
| 7. <u>Náko ya binú ezalí</u> wápi? | Where is your house? |
| 8. <u>Osálaka</u> wápi? | Where do you work? |
| 9. <u>Balobaka Lingála</u> wápi? | Where is Lingála spoken? |
| 10. <u>Olingí kokendé</u> wápi? | Where do you want to go?
Where are you about to go? |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nakei mosála | I'm on the way to work. |
| 2. Nakei <u>na esíka nasálaka.</u> | I'm going to the place where I work. |
| 3. <u>Azalí mécanicien</u> na esíka nasálaka. | He is a mechanic at the place where I work. |
| 4. Azalí <u>na ntángu malámu.</u> | He's on time. |
| 5. Azalí <u>libosó na ntángu.</u> | He's early. |
| 6. Azalí <u>nsima na ntángu.</u> | He's late. |
| 7. Azalí <u>kokendé mbángu na mosála?</u> | He's hurrying to work. |
| 8. <u>Secrétaire azalí</u> kokendé mbángu na mosála. | The secretary is hurrying to work. |

9. Secrétaire azaláki kosolola
na ngái. The secretary was talking
to me.
10. Mécanicien azaláki kosolola
na ngái. The mechanic was talking to
me.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Ozaláki kokénde wápi? Where were you going?
2. Ozaláki komóno níni? What were you looking at?
3. Olingáki komóno níni? What did you want to see?
4. Olingáki kokénde komóno
monument ya Stanley? Did you want to go see the
monument to Stanley?
5. Bazaláki kokénde komóno
monument ya Stanley? Were they going to see the
monument to Stanley?
6. Bazaláki kokénde kolámba
mbísí? Were they leaving to fix
the fish?
7. Mwána azaláki kokénde
kolámba mbísí? Was the child leaving to fix
the fish?
8. Mwána azaláki na mpondú
ná nyama. Did the child have manioc
leaves and meat?
9. Mamá na yó azaláki na
mpondú ná nyama? Did your mother have manioc
leaves and meat?
10. Mamá na yó akotíkala na
ndáko? Is your mother going to
stay in the house?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

Read the numbers horizontally.

a)	18	80	28	b)	40	50	4	5
	17	70	27		14	15	45	54
	16	60	26		60	70	6	7
	15	50	25		16	17	67	76
	14	40	24		20	30	2	3

c)	19	90	29	d)	36	63	33	66
	16	15	13		25	52	22	55
	20	50	40		67	76	77	66
	25	22	27		19	99	9	11
	38	68	18		8	88	38	78
e)	200	102	202	f)	200	300	400	
	600	604	640		1500	1600	1700	
	317	307	371		1808	1919	2000	
	869	879	829		1962	2116	2473	
	403	402	430		8217	5353	4962	

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Read the following times in Lingala according to the model given below.

-koma	to arrive; become; begin
minútu, minítı, minútı	minute(s)

Tokomı na ngonga ya mókó na minútu ntúku míbalé.	It's 1:20
--	-----------

6:20	10:55
5:10	11:55
2:00	7:35
4:05	2:10
12:30	6:25
7:15	12:50

8:40

9:00

9:50

4:30

1:05

5:45

3:35

3:50

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

-bakisa

to add

-longola

to take away, remove

1. Mókó bakísá mókó, ekókí
mibalé. One and one is two.
2. Mítano bakísá mísáto,
ekókí mwambe. Five and three is eight.
3. Nsambo bakísá libwá, ekókí
zómi na motóba. Seven and nine is sixteen.
4. Mínei bakísá mibalé, ekókí
motóba. Four and two is six.
5. Libwá bakísá motóba, ekókí
zómi na mítáno. Nine and six is fifteen.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Mibalé longóla mókó,
etikáli mókó. Two minus one is one.
2. Mínei longóla mibalé,
etikáli mibalé. Four minus two is two.
3. Ntúkú mibalé longóla
zómi, etikáli zómi. Twenty minus ten is ten.

4. Ntúkú mísátu longóla
ntúkú míbalé na mókó,
etikáli libwá. Thirty minus twenty-one is
nine.
5. Ntúkú mwambe longóla
ntúkú nsambo, etikáli
zómí. Eighty minus seventy is ten.

5.9 'Passive' Plural

Balobaka Lingála wápi?

That something 'is done' is often expressed by the third person plural, e.g., /Balobaka Lingála wápi?/, 'Where is Lingala spoken?', 'Where do they speak Lingala?' See also Note 10.2.

5.10 Adjectival Subordinate Clauses.

Nakéí na esíká nasálaka.

Adjectival subordinate clauses are not introduced by a relative, but are placed after the noun they modify just like any other adjective. Note /nasálaka/ in /Nakéí na esíká nasálaka/, 'I'm going to the place where I work.'

5.11 /kosolola na/

Secrétaire azaláki kosolola na ngái.

If followed by an object, /kosolola/ requires the particle /na/, e.g., /Secrétaire azaláki kosolola na ngái/, 'The secretary was talking to me'.

Unit 6

Basic Sentences

- A-
1. Mbóté, mwána mwási. Good afternoon, Miss.
- B-
2. Éé, mbóté. Good afternoon.
- A-
- 'bureau' office
3. Óyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine? Is this Mr. Antoine's office?
- B-
- míngí much, many
- yangó it, they, them
4. Yangó, kási azalí na mosálá míngí lẹlọ. It is, but he's very busy today.
- A-
- likambo, ma- difference, dispute, case, affair
5. Nalingí náloba na yé likambo. I would like to tell him something
- B-
- lobela to speak to
- te that...
6. Nalobélí yó te alingí komóno motu té lẹlọ na bureau na yé. I just told you that he doesn't want to see anyone at his office today.

-A-

-túna

to ask, question

-kóta, -kótọ

to go/come in

7. Okokí kotúna yé te sọkọ
alingí nákóta?

Would you ask him if I can come
in?

-B-

8. Lobéla ngái líkambo olingí.

Tell me what you want.

-A-

-tála

to look, look at,
stare at; guard
keep; concern; visit

9. Etáli bísú míbalé, yọ tẹ.

It concerns only us, not you.

-B-

-bóya

to refuse, reject, not
want, despise

10. Sọkọ obóyí, okokóta na
bureau na yé tẹ.

If you refuse (to tell me), you
can't go in.

-A-

libótá, ma-

family, household; descent

11. Ezalí líkambo ya libótá
na yé.

It concerns his family.

-B-

motu, moto, ba-

person, human being,
man; one, someone,
somebody

-kúfa

to die

12. Motu mọkọ akúfí?

Has someone died?

-A-

nókó, ba-

maternal uncle (see Note
19.3.)

mpási, m-

sickness, suffering, pain,
misery, difficulty

makási

strong, hard, difficult,
troublesome13. Nókó na yé azalí na mpási
makási.

His uncle is gravely ill.

-B-

toó

or

lopitálo, °balopitálo
(l'hôpital)

hospital

14. Azalí wápi, na ndáko toó
na lopitálo?Where is he, at home or at the
hospital?

-A-

sika

now, just now, new, recent

15. Bakeí na yé na lopitálo
sika óyo.They have taken him to the
hospital just now.

-B-

-zila

to wait, wait for

16. Zilá nayébisa yé.

Wait and I'll tell him.

-A-

17. Melesí.

Thanks.

-B-

18. Likambo té.

You are welcome. Don't mention
it. It's nothing.

USEFUL PHRASES

Mòkòlò ezalí malámu.	The weather is nice.
Lìkoló ezalí malámu.	The sky is clear.
Mòkòlò ezalí mabé.	The weather is bad.
Lìkoló ezalí mabé.	The sky is cloudy.
Lèlò mpíò míngí.	It's cold today.
Lèlò mpíò makásí.	It's cold today.
Lèlò móí míngí.	It's hot today.
Lèlò móí makásí.	It's hot today.
Lèlò molungé míngí.	It's hot today. It's stifling today.
Lìkoló eyéí kítókò.	It's clearing up.
Lìkoló eyéí mabé.	It's clouding up.
Mbúla ezalí konókò.	It's raining.
Mbúla eékonókò.	It's raining.
lìkoló, ma-	sky, heaven; upstream; outside, exterior; on top, over, on, above; surface; because of
mabé	bad, evil, ugly
mpíò, m-	cold
móí	sun, sunlight, daylight, the heat of the sun
molungé, m-	warmth, heat; fever, sweat; stifling
kítókò	beautiful, pretty, fine; delicious, clean, neat

mbúla, m-	rain, year, rainy season
-nó, -nókɔ	to rain

6.1 Equational Sentences

Óyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?

Equational sentences are sentences which have no verb in which (1) two nouns are equated, e.g., /Mosálá na ngái mécanicien/, 'I am a mechanic,' (2) a pronoun and noun are equated, e.g., /Óyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?/, 'Is this Mr. Antoine's office? or (3) possession is demonstrative, e.g., /Ndáko ya tatá na bangó/, 'The house belongs to their father'. In all three types there is an optional and equally current expression with the same meaning in which the two parts of the equation are linked by /-zalı́/, e.g., /Mosálá na ngái ezalı́ mécanicien/, 'I am a mechanic'.

6.2 Non-animate Independent Pronouns

Yangó

In Unit I the independent forms of the animate pronoun were introduced. There is also an independent inanimate pronoun /yangó/, 'it', 'they', 'them', which has the same form for singular and plural, e.g., /Pésá yé yangó/, 'Give it to him', 'Give them to him'.

6.3 Subjunctive

Nalingí náloba na yé likambó.

The subjunctive is marked by a high tone on the pronoun prefix and a low tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /náloba/, 'that I talk', as in /Nalingí náloba na yé likambó/, 'I would like to tell him something', literally, 'I want that I tell to him something'. Using the subjunctive is a very polite way of making a request, 'I want to tell him something', would be construed with an infinitive after /-linga/, as in /Nalingí koloba na yé likambo/.

The subjunctive is also used as an imperative, e.g., /Bóliá/, 'Eat' (speaking to more than one person), or as a cohortative, e.g., /Tóliá/, 'Let's eat'.

The subjunctive is also used to ascertain what another person wants done, e.g., /Náliá?/, 'Do you want me to eat?' or 'Do you think I should eat?'

To indicate obligation, i.e., 'should', 'ought to', /ekokí/ plus the subjunctive is used, e.g., /Ekokí ákèndè/, 'He should go', 'He ought to go', 'It is fitting that he go'.

6.4 Applicative Suffix

Nalobélí yọ́

The applicative suffix /-el-/ means 'to do something for or to someone', e.g., /nalobélí yọ́/, 'I told (to) you'. The same meaning can be expressed by /na/ as by /-el-/, e.g., /nalobí na yọ́/, 'I told (to) you'.

6.5 Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/.

Nalobélí yọ́ te alingí komónọ́ motu tẹ́.

Indirect discourse is often introduced by the optional particle /te/, 'that', as in /Nalobélí yọ́ te alingí komónọ́ motu tẹ́/, 'I told you that he didn't want to see anyone.' /te/, 'that', is //te// to distinguish it from /tẹ́/, 'not', which is //te//.

/te/ sometimes occurs in indirect discourse even if there is another particle at the beginning of the dependent clause, e.g., /Okokí kotúna yé te sọkọ́ olingí nákọ́ta?/, 'Can you ask him (that) if I can come in?'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Mosá alá na yó níni? | What's your occupation? |
| 2. Mosá alá na <u>ngái mécanicien.</u> | I am a mechanic. |
| 3. <u>Ndáko ya</u> mécanicien. | The house belongs to the mechanic. |
| 4. Ndáko ya <u>tatá na bangó.</u> | The house belongs to their father. |
| 5. <u>Azali</u> tatá na bangó. | He is their father. |
| 6. Azali <u>kokénde na mosá alá.</u> | He is on his way to work. He has (already) left for work. |
| 7. <u>Nalingí</u> kokénde na mosá alá. | I'm about to leave for work. |
| 8. Nalingí <u>kokénde kozwá nyama.</u> | I want to get some meat. |
| 9. <u>Bána bazalí</u> kokénde kozwá nyama. | The children are going to get some meat. |
| 10. Bána bazalí <u>komata mabángá.</u> | The children are climbing the rocks. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Óyo buréau ya Monsiéur Zóla. | This is Mr. Zola's office. |
| 2. <u>Óyo ndáko</u> ya Monsiéur Zóla. | This is Mr. Zola's house. |
| 3. Óyo ndáko <u>monéne.</u> | This is a big house. |
| 4. <u>Pésá yé ya</u> monéne. | Give him the big one. |
| 5. Pésá yé <u>mosá alá.</u> | Give him a job. |
| 6. <u>Tozali</u> kokénde na mosala | We are going to work. |
| 7. Tozali kokénde <u>kotúna yé.</u> | We are going to ask him. |
| 8. <u>Mwási akokí</u> kotúna yé. | The woman can ask him. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 9. Mwási akokí <u>kobóya koloba</u>
<u>na mobáli</u> . | The woman can refuse to talk
to the man. |
| 10. <u>Mwána azalí</u> kobóya koloba
<u>na mobáli</u> . | The child is going to refuse
to speak to the man. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nalobélí yó te nazalí na
mosálá. | I just told you that I'm busy. |
| 2. Nalobélí yé <u>ázila</u> . | I told him to wait. |
| 3. <u>Túná</u> yé ázila. | Ask him to wait. |
| 4. <u>Túná bangó bákóta</u> . | Ask them to come in. |
| 5. <u>Alingí</u> bangó bákóta. | He wants them to come in. |
| 6. Alingí <u>kokende na ndáko</u> . | He wants to go home. |
| 7. Alingí <u>ákende na ndáko</u> . | He's leaving for home right
away. |
| 8. Alingí <u>áyéba likambo nini</u>
<u>ezalí</u> . | He wants to know what it is. |
| 9. Alingí áyéba <u>sókó okokí</u>
<u>kosála yangó</u> . | He wants to know if you can
do it. |
| 10. Alingí áyéba <u>sókó osálaka</u>
<u>na CEGEAC</u> . | He wants to know if you work
at C.E.G.E.A.C. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Tókende kolía. | Let's go eat. |
| 2. Tókende <u>kozwela yé nyama</u> . | Let's go get him some meat. |
| 3. Tókende <u>na ndáko</u> . | Let's go home. |

4. Tólia na ndáko. Let's eat at home.
 5. Tólia libosó ya kokende. Let's eat before going.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Balingí báloba na yó. They would like to talk to you.
 2. Balingí koloba na yó. They want to talk to you.
 3. Balingí kokende na yó. They want to go with you.
 4. Balingí bakende na yó. They would like to go with you.
 5. Balingí kolia na yó. They want to eat with you.
 6. Balingí balia na yó. They would like to eat with you.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mosála na yó níni? What's your occupation?
 2. Mosála na yó mécanicien. You are a mechanic.
 3. Mosála na yó ezali makási. Your work is difficult.
 4. Ndako oyo ezali makási. This house is well-built.
 5. Ndako oyo ezali ya tata
ya bangó. This house belongs to their
father.
 6. Oyo ndako ya tata ya bangó. This is their father's house.
 7. Kende kolobela tata ya
bangó. Go talk to their father.
Go talk on behalf of their father.
 8. Kende kolobela yé te
motu mokó akufi. Go tell him a member of his
family has died.
 9. Kende kotuna yé sokó
motu mokó akufi. Go ask him if a member of his
family has died.
 10. Kende kotuna yé sokó azali
na ndako too na lopitalo. Go ask him if she is at home or
at the hospital.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Nalingí náloba na yé likambo. I would like to tell him something.
2. Nalingí áyáa kotála ngái. I want him to come see me.
3. Nalingí óyébisa yé. I want you to inform him.
4. Zílá óyébisa yé. Wait to advise him.
5. Zílá ótúna yé. Wait to ask him.
6. Alingí ótúna yé. He wants you to ask her.
7. Alingí álicá sika óyo. He would like to eat right away.
8. Atúni álicá sika óyo. He asked to eat right away.
9. Atúni ngái náyáa. He asked me to come.
10. Batúni ngái náyáa. I was asked to come.

Unit 7

Basic Sentences

Na zándó

At the market.

-A-

téké, -téka

to sell

litungúlu, ma-

onion, leek

bóní

how much, how many

1. Tatá, otéka matungúlu
nsambo bóní?

How much are you asking for
seven onions? What do you
want for seven onions?

-B-

falánga, falánka (franc)

franc(s)

2. Óyo ya minéne falánga zómí
na motóbá.

The big ones are sixteen francs.

-A-

bóongó

thus, so, likewise,
therefore

3. Bóongó, ya miké?

And the little ones?

-B-

4. Falánga mwambí.

Eight francs.

-A-

5. Nalingí míbalé ya minéne
na mínei ya miké.

I'd like two big ones and four
little ones.

-B-

6. Nákanga motóbá?

Should I wrap up the six?

- A-
7. Éé. Yes.
- B-
8. Pésá falánga nsambo. That will be seven francs.
 -sómba to buy
 pílípílí red pepper; (black pepper)
9. Osómba pílípílí tété? Don't you want to buy any
 peppers?
 -luka to hunt, search for
 -lukela to get for someone
 mpáta five-franc piece
 matabísí (matabiche) tip, gratuity, advantage,
 profit, matabiche, some-
 thing extra given as an
 incentive to buy
10. Lukéla ngái ya malámu, Pick me out some good ones for
 ya mpáta míbalé, ná ten francs. Also add the
 matabísí. matabiche.
- B-
11. Leló matabísí ezalí tété, There's no matabiche today,
 zóngá lóbí. come back tomorrow.

USEFUL PHRASES

1. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa leló My wife is coming this morning.
 na ntóngó.
2. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa leló My wife is coming this afternoon.
 na mpókwa.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Mwási na ngái akoyáa lẹlọ́
na butú. | My wife is coming tonight. |
| 4. Mwási na ngái akoyáa lẹlọ́
na midí. | My wife is coming at noon. |
| 5. Mwási na ngái akoyáa lẹlọ́
na midí ya butú. | My wife is coming at midnight. |
| 6. Mwási na ngái akoyáa na
mpósq óyo. | My wife will arrive this week. |
| 7. Mwási na ngái akoyáa na
sánzá óyo. | My wife will arrive this month. |
| 8. Mwási na ngái akoyáa lẹbí
ekoyáa. | My wife will arrive the day
after tomorrow. |
| 9. Mwási na ngái ayákí lẹbí
elekí. | My wife arrived the day before
yesterday. |
| 10. Mwási na ngái ayákí na
mpósq elekí. | My wife arrived last week. |

ntóngó, n-

morning, forenoon (5-11)

midí

noon (11-2)

mpókwa, n-

afternoon (2-6)

butú

night (6-5)

midí ya butú

midnight (11-1)

sánzá

moon, month

-leka

to go past, past by; die;
surpass, excel, be more
than

7.1 Desiderative

otéka matungúlu nsambo bóní?

The desiderative is marked by a low tone imperfective suffix and means 'to want to', 'to expect to', 'to care to', /Otéka matungúlu nsambo bóní?/, 'What do you want for seven onions?', 'What do you expect to get for seven onions?', or /olía/, 'Do you want to eat?', 'Would you care to eat?', 'Would you care for something to eat?', 'You want/would like to eat...'

7.2 Nominalization of Adjectives

Both single-word and phrasal adjectives are nominalized by the particle /ya/, e.g., /ya Monsieur Antoine/, 'Mr. Antoine's', /ya ngái/, 'mine', and /ya monéne/, 'a big one'. Nominalized adjectives occur in the sentence like any other noun, e.g., /Ya monéne ezali kitókó/, 'The big one is beautiful'. In the plural, the verb prefix is /bɪ-/ or sometimes /mɪ-/, e.g., /Ya minéne bɪzalı kitókó/, 'The big ones are beautiful'.

PATTERN DRILL 1

náni	who
1. Lobéla ngái likambo olingí.	Tell me what you want.
2. Lobéla ngái <u>akendéki wápi</u> .	Tell me where he went.
3. Lobéla ngái <u>azalı wápi</u> .	Tell me where he is.
4. Lobéla ngái <u>azalı nání</u> .	Tell me who he is.
5. Lobéla ngái <u>sókó azalı na ndáko</u> .	Tell me if he is home.
6. Lobéla ngái <u>likambo óyo asalı</u> .	Tell me what he did.
7. Lobéla ngái <u>sókí olingí kolía</u> .	Tell me if you want to eat.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. Lobéla ngái, <u>mamá na yó</u>
<u>azali malámu.</u> | Tell me how your mother is. |
| 9. Lobéla ngái, <u>okoyáa lóbi</u>
<u>na ndáko ya ngái.</u> | Tell me if you're coming to my
house tomorrow. |
| 10. Lobéla ngái, <u>oyáki áwa</u>
<u>ntángo níni.</u> | Tell me when you arrived. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nakotéke ndáko na ngái. | I will sell my house. |
| 2. <u>Nakotékele yó</u> ndáko na ngái. | I will sell my house to you. |
| 3. Nakotékele yó <u>matungúlu.</u> | I will sell you some onions. |
| 4. <u>Akosómba</u> matungúlu. | He will buy some onions. |
| 5. Akosómba <u>lòso na yó.</u> | He will buy rice from you. |
| 6. <u>Bakotíkala na</u> lòso na yó. | They will keep your rice. |
| 7. Bakotíkala na <u>mbísi</u> na yó. | They will look after the fish
for you. |
| 8. <u>Tokosómbela yó</u> mbísi. | We will buy the fish for you. |
| 9. Tokosómbela yó <u>nsósó.</u> | We will buy the chicken for you. |
| 10. <u>Akokangela yó</u> nsósó. | He'll wrap up the chicken for
you. |

QUESTION AND ANSWER DRILL 1

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Óyo ya minéne bóní? | How much are the big ones? |
| Óyo ya minéne <u>mpáta mínei.</u> | The big ones are twenty francs. |
| 2. Óyo ya miké bóní? | How much are the small ones? |
| Óyo ya miké <u>falánga zómi.</u> | The small ones are ten francs. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. Nání asómbélí yó matungúlu?
<u>Mwási óyo</u> asómbélí ngái matungúlu. | Who paid you for the onions?
This woman paid me for the onions. |
| 4. Ntángo níní asómbélí yó matungúlu?
Asómbélí ngái <u>yangó lóbi</u> . | When did she pay you for the onions?
She paid me for them yesterday. |
| 5. Osómbákí níní?
Nasómbákí <u>pilipíli</u> . | What did you buy?
I bought some peppers. |
| 6. Matabísí níní olingí ópésa ngái?
Nalingí nápésa yó <u>pilipíli</u> <u>mísátu</u> . | What matabiche will (would) you give me?
I'll (I'd) give you three peppers. |
| 7. Olingí nápésa yó bóní?
Nalingí ópésa ngái <u>zómí</u> . | How many would you like?
I'd like ten. |
| 8. Nákanga yangó?
<u>Sókó olingí</u> , kangá yangó. | Should I wrap them?
Please wrap them. |
| 9. Osómbákí nyama yangó ntangú níní?
Nasómbákí <u>yangó leló</u> . | When did you buy that meat?
I bought it today. |
| 10. Nakokí kosómba pilipíli zómí falánga bóní?
Okokí kosómba falánga <u>zómí</u> <u>na mibalé</u> . | How much will ten peppers cost?
You can buy (them) for twelve francs. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

etabe, bi-	banana
lilála, ma-	orange
madésu	beans
mbálá, m-	potato

1. Mwási azalí na madésu
ya minéne. The woman has large beans.
2. Nasómbákí madésu ya minéne. I bought some large beans.
3. Nasómbákí bitabe ná
matungúlu. I bought some bananas and some
onions.
4. Mwána mobáli azalákí kotéka
bitabe ná matungúlu. The boy was selling bananas
and onions.
5. Mwána mobáli azalákí kotéka
pilipili. The boy was selling peppers.
6. Moto mókó akangéli ngái
pilipili. Someone wrapped up the peppers
for me.
7. Moto mókó atékéli yé
malála ya malámu. Somebody sold him some nice
oranges.
8. Lukéla ngái malála ya malámu. Pick me out some nice oranges.
9. Lukéla ngái mbálá ya minéne. Pick me out some large potatoes.
10. Nákanga mbálá ya minéne? Shall I wrap up the large pota-
toes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Ósóbela ngái matungúlu
ya mpáta míbalé. Buy me ten franc's worth of
onions.
2. Ósóbela ngái mbísi na
magazini. Buy me some fish at the store.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. <u>Naákozila yó</u> na magazíni. | I'll be waiting for you at the store. |
| 4. Naákozila yó <u>na ndáko ya Pólo.</u> | I'll be waiting for you at Paul's house. |
| 5. <u>Alingí ásómba</u> ndáko ya Pólo. | He would like to buy Paul's house. |
| 6. Alingí ásómba <u>madé̄su na yó nyónsò.</u> | He'd like to buy all of your beans. |
| 7. <u>Akoki kosómba</u> madé̄su na yó nyónsò. | He can sell all of your beans. |
| 8. Akoki kosómba <u>lòsò na tata ngái.</u> | He can sell the rice to my father. |
| 9. Akokáki <u>kotéke ya miké té.</u> | He couldn't sell the little ones. |
| 10. Akokáki <u>kokanga ya minéne té.</u> | He couldn't wrap up the big ones. |

PATTERN DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Lukéla ngái <u>mísátu</u> ya malámu. | Pick me out three good ones. |
| 2. Lukéla ngái <u>minei</u> ya <u>minéne.</u> | Pick me out four big ones. |
| 3. Lukéla ngái <u>mitánu</u> ya <u>miké.</u> | Pick me out five little ones. |
| 4. <u>Kangéla</u> ngái <u>mitánu</u> ya <u>miké.</u> | Wrap me up five little ones. |
| 5. <u>Ósómbela</u> ngái <u>mitánu</u> ya <u>miké.</u> | Sell me five little ones. |
| 6. Ósómbela ngái <u>matungúlu</u> ya <u>mpáta mibalé.</u> | Sell me the onion for ten francs. |
| 7. Ósómbela ngái <u>yangó lóbi.</u> | Buy them for me tomorrow. |
| 8. <u>Osómbéli</u> ngái <u>yangó lóbi.</u> | You bought them for me yesterday. |

9. Nalingí nápésá yó yangó I'd like to give them to you
lóbí. tomorrow.
10. Nalingí ópésá ngái falánga I want you to give me ten francs.
zómí.

PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Olía etabe? Would you care for a banana?
Eé, nalia etabe. Yes, I'd like a banana.
2. Otéka madésu té? Don't you want to sell the beans?
Té, kási natéka malála. No, but I'd like to sell the
oranges.
3. Oyáa na ngái na Kisanganí? Do you want to go to Stanleyville
with me?
Eé, nalingí koyáa na yó Yes, I'd like to go to Stanleyville
na Kisanganí. with you.
4. Asómba mbálá? Would he like to buy some potatoes?
Eé, asómba mbálá. Yes, he'd like to buy some pota-
toes.

7.3 Interrogative relative pronouns

Lobéla ngái akendékí wápi.

Interrogative relative pronouns occur at the end of the subordinate clause, e.g., /Lobéla ngái akendékí wápi/, 'Tell me where he went', literally, 'Tell me he went where.'

7.4 Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses

Lobéla ngái, oyákí áwa ntángo níni.

There is a potential juncture, i.e., optional pause, between

the main and subordinate clauses. This juncture is marked by a comma / , /. The juncture nearly always occurs if the subordinate clause has more than about seven or eight syllables.

7.5 /-tíkala/ Plus Object

Bakotíkala na lósq na yó.

/-tíkala/ has the particle /na/ if followed by an object, e.g., /Bakotíkala na lósq na yó/, 'They will keep your rice.'

7.6 Please

Sókó olingí, kangá yangó.

/Sókó olingí,/, 'If you are willing', is used for politeness, much like English 'Please,', or French 's'il vous plait'.

Unit 8

Basic Sentences

NA POMPI YA ESSENCE	AT THE FILLING STATION
-A-	
-tíya	to put, put in, set, pour in
-tíela, -tíyela, -tíla	to put for (someone)
'litre'	liter
'essence'	gasoline
1. Mwána, tíelá ngái litres mitánu ya essence, sókó olingí.	Boy, put in five liters of gasoline for me, please.
-B-	
méyá, loméyá	50-centime piece
2. Fésá mpáta míbalé na méyá.	That will be 12.5 francs (12,5F.).
-A-	
mafúta	oil, grease, fat
mái	water
3. Na nsima tálá mafúta ná mái.	After that, look at the oil and water.
-B-	
ái	oh, hey
-síla	to finish, be done, finished
4. Ái, mafúta esílí.	Hey, there's no oil.

-A-

linzanza, ma-

metal box, tin can,
iron sheet

5. Tíyá linzanza mókó ya ntúkú Put in a 50-centiliter can.
mítánu centilitres.

-B-

lisúsu

again, besides, else, other

6. Bóongó na nsima násála What else can I do for you?
lisúsu níní?

-A-

-bongó, -bonga

to be suitable, be in
order, come along well

-bongisa

to put in order, arrange,
prepare, repair,
straighten, organize

lokolo, ma-

leg, foot; tire, wheel

wána, wána

that; there

-zánga

to be lacking, miss, be
without; be absent, skip,
miss, omit

mopépe, mi-

air, wind

7. Óbongisa lokolo wána ya Fix that back tire that is flat.
nsima ezángí mopépe. Have that back tire fixed that
is flat.

-B-

8. Bóongó, okozila mwáa moké. All right, (but) you will (have
to) wait a little while.

-A-

9. Tẹ nakeí, nakoóngá na nsima. No, I'm leaving, I'll come back
later.

USEFUL PHRASES

Ayébí kotámbwisa mótuka.	He knows how to drive.
Ayébí epái bakokí kozwá ebendé ya mótuka.	He knows where you can get automobile parts.
Ayébí ndéngé ya kobongisa mótuka.	He knows how to repair automobiles.
Ayébí likambo ntína.	He understands the matter.
Nasíli kosukola mótuka.	I've already washed the car.
Nasíli nasukóli mótuka.	I've just now finished washing the car.
Naúti kosukola mótuka.	I've just this instant finished washing the car.
Mésa óyo ebongí na ngái.	This table is suitable for me.
Bilambá óyo bibongí na ngái.	These clothes look good on me.
Kítí óyo ebongí na mésa wána.	This chair goes well with that table.
Kangá mótuka.	Lock the car.
Kangóla mótuka.	Unlock the car.
Sémbóla Lingála, Lingála likosémbola yó.	Look after Lingala, and Lingala will look after you.
	Use good Lingala, and Lingala will serve you well.
-támbola	to take a walk, travel move, make progress, hurry up
-támbwisa	to cause to progress, drive a car, spread put in motion, start

mótuka, m1-	automobile, truck
epáí, b1-	side; part; direction; district; where
ebendé, b1-	piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
ntína, n-	root; basis; meaning reason, significance, principle
ntína na	because of, on account of, therefore
-sukola	to wash, clean; tell someone off
-úta	to come from, be on the way from
útá (see Note 8.9.)	from, since
mésa	table
kítí	chair
-kangola	to release, let go of, loose, open, unroll, unlock, unfasten
-sémba	to extend, be right, be upright
-sémbola	to put right, straighten up, make vertical

NOTES

8.1 Vowel and Semi-vowel Elision.

/y/ between vowels is often elided, e.g., /-tíyela/, 'to put for someone,' is often /-tíela/.

/e/ after /i/ is often elided, e.g., /-tíela/ is often /-tíla/.

8.2 Reversive

The reversive extension /-ol-/ has two functions: (1) negative, and (2) directive. (1) The negative reversive indicates the opposite or negative of the verb base, e.g., /-kanga/, 'to fasten', 'lock', 'hold', /-kangola/, 'to unfasten', 'unlock', 'release'. (2) The directive reversive indicates direction away from or off of, e.g., /-kaba/, 'to give', 'state', 'divide', 'shave', /-kabola/, 'to hand out', 'distribute', 'divide up', 'separate' /-palola/, 'to skin', 'peel', 'scrape (off)', /-pasola/ 'to tear (off)', 'cleave', 'split (off)', 'saw', 'clear (away)', /-papola/, 'to make thinner', 'shave off', 'remove an excess'.

8.3 Reversive Stative

The extension /-w-/ before a vowel or /-u-/ before a consonant marks existence in the reverse state of the base, e.g., /-kangwa/, 'to be open(ed)', 'be unlocked', or /-sémbwa/, 'to be in an upright position', -pasuka/, 'be worn out'. Though the reversive stative suffix occurs with many common bases, the student should avoid using stems with it that he has not previously seen because it is incompatible with many bases and occurs with many others only in combination with certain other extensions. This will be studied further in Notes 13.1 and 13.2.

8.4 Derived Stems Without Simple Stems

There are many derived stems, i.e., base plus verbal extensions, for which there is no corresponding simple stem, i.e., base without verbal extension(s), e.g., /-yékola/, 'to study; /*-yéka/ does not occur. Because of this the student should not make analogical back formations of simple stems from derived stems. This is especially true of derived stems with /-ol-/ or /-w-/.

8.5 Causative

Óbɔngɪsa lokolo wána.

The causative extension /-ɪs-/ means 'to cause to do', 'to make someone do', 'have someone do', e.g., /Óbɔngɪsa lokolo wána/, 'Fix that tire', 'Have that tire fixed', 'Make someone fix that tire'.

When /-ɪs-/ occurs after a reversive extension, some stems take /-ol-/ as the reversive, others take /-w-/, and others take both with different meanings, e.g., /-támbwɪsa/, 'to drive a car', but /-támbolɪsa/, 'to take a person for a walk'. In general, /-ol-/ is used with animate objects and /-w-/ is used with inanimate objects, but there are many exceptions.

8.6 Degree of Immediate Past

In Note 2.5. the immediate past was characterized as something that has 'just' happened, but it was also shown that the period of time covered by the immediate past is often somewhat longer than what we mean in English by 'just' happened, e.g., /Nasílí kosukola mótuka/, 'I've already washed the car', 'I've just washed the car'. This could even mean several days ago. To indicate that something has been done in the last five or ten minutes or so, one uses /Nasílí nasukólí mótuka/, I've just now finished washing the car'. But to indicate even more immediateness, one uses /Naútí kosukola mótuka/, 'I've just this instant finished

washing the car', literally 'I have come from washing the car', i.e., 'the last thing I did before the moment of speaking was wash the car'.

8.7 Proverb Concordance

Sémbóla Lingála, Lingála likosémbola yó.

Proverbs are a literary form very highly regarded in Africa. In Lingala proverbs, subject prefixes to the verb take the literary style of prefix concordances, e.g., in the proverb above the literary form /likosémbola/ occurs and not the usual form /ekosémbola/. Compare Note 4.2.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Na nsima tálá mafúta. | After that, look at the oil. |
| 2. <u>Na libosó</u> tálá mafúta. | Before that, look at the oil. |
| 3. Na libosó <u>mwána atí linzanza</u>
<u>mókó ya ntúku mítánu ya</u>
<u>mafúta</u> . | Before that, the boy put in a
50-centiliter can of oil. |
| 4. <u>Nalobéli mwána átiya</u> linzanza
mókó ya ntúku mítánu cen-
tilitre ya mafúta. | I told the boy to put in a
50-centiliter can of oil. |
| 5. Nalobéli mwána átiya <u>litres</u>
<u>ntúku mibalé ya essence</u> . | I told the boy to put in twenty
liters of gasoline. |
| 6. <u>Motu wána alingí</u> litres
ntúku mibalé ya essence. | That man wants twenty liters of
gasoline. |
| 7. Motu wána alingí <u>bóbongisela</u>
<u>yé lokolo ya mótuka</u> . | That man wants to have his tire
fixed. |
| 8. <u>Tatá na yé alingí</u> bóbongisela
yé lokolo ya mótuka. | His father wants to have his
tire repaired. |

9. Tatá na yé alingí názila yé. His father wants me to wait for him.
10. Mwási na ngái alingí názila yé. My wife wants me to wait for her.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

Answer the questions according to the cues.

1. Okendéki ntángo nini? What time did you leave?
Nakendéki na ngonga ya minei. I left at four o'clock.
2. Osálaka nini na ntóngó? What do you do in the morning?
Nayékolaka na ntóngó. I study mornings.
3. Oyáki mokololo nini na Leo? When did you arrive in Leopoldville?
Nayáki na mposo eleki. I arrived last week.
4. Násala nini na nsósó oyo etikáli? What should I do with the rest of the chicken?
Pésa yé nsósó oyo etikáli. Give him the rest of the chicken.
5. Bozaláki koloba nini? What were you talking about?
Tozaláki koloba likambo ya bási. We are talking about women.
6. Balingi litres boni ya essence? How many liters of gasoline do they want?
Balingi litres ntuku misatu ya essence. They want thirty liters of gasoline.
7. Falanga boni apesi na mwasi? How many francs did he give the woman?

- Apésí yé nkámá mókó. He gave her one hundred.
8. Otíkí lokolo na mótuka wápi? Where did you leave the tire?
Natíkí yangó na esíká ya kotéka essence. I left it at the filling station.
9. Obandí mosálá? Have you started working?
Nabandí mosálá útá ngonga ya mókó. I started working at one o'clock.
I have been working since one o'clock.
10. Obandí mosálá ntángu níní? How long have you been working?
Nabandí mosálá útá ngonga mókó. I have been working for one hour.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Natiísí yé mafúta na mótuka. I had him put some oil in the car.
2. Natiísí yé litres ntúkú misátu ya essence. I had him put in thirty litres of gasoline.
3. Natiísí yé lokolo ya sika na mótuka. I had him put a new tire on my car.
4. Tosómbákí lokolo ya sika na mótuka. We bought a new tire for the car.
5. Tosómbákí makolo na mótuka. We bought some tires for the car.
6. Abongísélákí bisú makolo ya mótuka. He repaired the tires for us.
7. Abongísélákí bisú mótuka ntángu tozalákí komela Coca-Cola. He repaired the car for us while we were drinking a Coke.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 8. Abɔŋísélákí bísú mótuka
<u>ntángu tozalákí kozila.</u> | He repaired the car for us
while we were waiting. |
| 9. Abɔŋísélákí bísú mótuka
<u>ntángu tozalákí kolía midí.</u> | He repaired the car for us
while we had lunch. |
| 10. Abɔŋísélákí bísú mótuka
<u>ntángu mbúla ezalákí
konóko.</u> | He repaired the car for us
while it was raining. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Alobákí na mwána áloba
lisúsu. | She told the child to say it
again. |
| 2. Alobákí na mwána <u>ákanga
ndáko.</u> | She told the child to close
the door. |
| 3. <u>Akangísákí ndáko</u> na mwána. | She had the child close the
door. She had the door
closed by the child. |
| 4. Akangísákí <u>búuku na bána.</u> | She had the children close
their books. |
| 5. <u>Bapésákí</u> búuku na bána. | They gave the children some
books. |
| 6. Bapésákí <u>binú minítí zómí
mpó na kosílisa mosálá.</u> | They gave you ten minutes to
finish the job. |
| 7. Bapésákí <u>ngái mótuka
mosúsu ya kotámbwisa.</u> | They gave me another car to
drive. |
| 8. <u>Nalingí</u> mótuka mosúsu ya
kotámbwisa. | I need another car to drive. |
| 9. Nalingí <u>essence na lizanza
óyo.</u> | I want some gasoline in this
can. |
| 10. <u>Tiéla ngái litres zómí ya
essence</u> na lizanza óyo. | Put ten liters of gasoline in
this can for me. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nasílí kobongísela mobáli
óyo lokolo ya mótuka. | I've already repaired the tire
for the man. |
| 2. Nasílí <u>nabongísélí</u> mobáli
óyo lokolo ya mótuka. | I've just now finished repairing
the tire for the man. |
| 3. <u>Naúti</u> kobongísela mobáli
óyo lokolo ya mótuka. | I've just this instant finished
repairing the tire for the
man. |
| 4. Naúti <u>kotiya litres mítánu</u>
<u>ya essence na mótuka.</u> | I've just this instant fin-
ished putting five liters
of gasoline in the car. |
| 5. <u>Nasílí</u> kotiya litres mítánu
ya essence na mótuka. | I've already put five liters
of gasoline in the car. |
| 6. Nasílí <u>natií</u> litres mítánu
ya essence na mótuka. | I've just now put five liters
of gasoline in the car. |
| 7. Nasílí <u>natáli mafúta na máí.</u> | I've just now looked at the oil
and water. |
| 8. Nasílí <u>kotála</u> mafúta na máí. | I've already looked at the oil
and the water. |
| 9. <u>Naúti</u> kotála mafúta na máí. | I've just this instant looked
at the oil and the water. |
| 10. Naúti <u>kosukola mótuka.</u> | I've just this instant finished
washing the car. |

PATTERN DRILL 1

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Ayébi kobongísa mótuka. | He knows how to repair cars. |
| 2. Ayébi <u>elóko akosála.</u> | He knows what to do. |
| 3. Ayébi <u>kotámbwisa mótuka.</u> | He knows how to drive. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Ayébi <u>likambo níni ezalí.</u> | He knows what's the matter. |
| 5. Ayébi <u>epái bakokí kozwá ebendé ya mótuka.</u> | He knows where to get parts for automobiles. |
| 6. Ayébi <u>mokolo níni akozónga na Leó.</u> | He knows what day she returns to Leopoldville. |
| 7. Ayébi <u>mpó na níni batu batíki mosálá.</u> | He knows why the men stopped working. |
| 8. Ayébi <u>ntángu níni bakeí.</u> | He knows when they left. |
| 9. Ayébi <u>ndéngé níni bakokí kofungola monoko ya ndáko.</u> | He know how to unlock the door. |
| 10. Ayébi <u>na ngonga bóni bakokí kosílisa mosálá.</u> | He knows how fast it can be done. |
| 11. Ayébi <u>likambo ntína.</u> | He comprehends the problem. |

8.8 Non-aplicative Verbs With Two Objects.

Pésá yé nsósó óyo etikáli.

Certain verbs, such as /-pésá/, 'to give', take two objects even though the verb doesn't have the applicative extension, e.g., /Pésá yé nsósó óyo etikáli/, 'Give him the rest of the chicken'.

8.9 Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative.

Nabandí mosálá útá ngonga ya mókó.

Certain verbs indicating stopping, starting, origin, or destination, are used in the imperative to mark the beginning or end of an interval of time or space, e.g., the sentence above, 'I have been working since one o'clock', literally, 'I started working begin(ning) one o'clock'.

Unit 9

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Olingí mosálá? Are you looking for work?

-B-

2. Nalingí. I am.

-A-

3. Oyébi mosálá níni? What do you know how to do?

-B-

-ngoma

to iron, press

4. Kolámba, kobongisa ndáko, Cooking, house work, washing,
kosukola bilambá, mpé and ironing.
kongoma.

-A-

5. Malámu, mosálá na yó Fine, your job (will be) the
kosukola bilambá. laundry.

6. Nakopésa yó na sánzá I will give you one thousand
nkóto mókó. Olingí? francs per month. Is that
satisfactory?

-B-

7. Elekí moké, bakísá lisúsu That's too little, add three
nkámá mísátu. hundred francs more.

8. Sókó osáli malámu, bóongó If you do good work, I'll
nakobákisa. increase you.

9. Olingí kobanda mosálá lóbi? Do you want to start to work
tomorrow?

-B-

10. Tẹ́, kásí nalingí kobanda
mosálá ló bí ekoyáa. No, but I want to start the
day after tomorrow.

-A-

tíí, téé, tí

until; a long time; far

11. Malámu, mosálá na yọ́
ekozala útá ngonga ya
nsambo ya ntóngó, téé
na ngonga ya mítánu ya
mpókwa. Good, your working hours will be
from 7.00 A.M. to 5.00 P.M.

12. Kokómaka nsima ya ntángu
tẹ́. Don't get in the habit of being
late.

-B-

13. Tẹ́, nakoyáa na ntángu
malámu. No, I won't. I'll be on time.

USEFUL PHRASES

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Limbísá ngáí. | Excuse me. Pardon me. |
| Lekísá ngáí. | Let me pass. Let me by. |
| Látá bílambá mpémbé. | Put on clean clothes. |
| Longólá bílambá mbíndu na nzótu. | Take off your dirty clothes. |
| Longwá! | Scram! Get lost! |
| Tandá mbétu. | Make the bed. |
| Tandá mésa. | Set the table. |
| Sukólá basáni. | Wash the dishes. |
| Sukólá tá sí na sáni ya tá sí. | Wash the cup and saucer. |
| Sukólá kópọ na lútu. | Wash the glass and spoon. |

Sukólá mbé̂lí, kán̂ya, na nkelé.	Wash the knives, forks, and spoons.
Kitísélá ngáí sandúku na nsé.	Send my suitcase down.
Mēmélé ngáí sandúku na nsé.	Bring my suitcase down.
Mēmélé ngáí sandúku na líkoló.	Bring my suitcase up.
Butísélá ngáí sandúku na líkoló.	Send my suitcase up.
Butísélá ngáí sumé na sabóni.	Send me up some towels and soap.
Komęla líkáyá tẹ.	No smoking.
Kokọta tẹ.	Do not enter.
-límbisa	to forgive, pardon, excuse
-láta	to dress, put on clothes
nzótu, nzóto, n-	body
-tanda	to spread, stretch out
mésa	table
mbétu, mbéto, m-	bed, pallet
sáni, ba-	dish, bowl, plate, basin
tási (tasse)	cup
kọpọ	glass, tumbler, cup
lútu	spoon
mbé̂lí	knife
kanya, nkán̂ya, (n-)	fork
lokelé, n-	spoon
-kita	to go/come down, descend; decrease, diminish
sandúku, (ba-)	box, chest, trunk, suitcase,
nsé, n-	earth, world; bottom; down, under, beneath

-mẹmẹ	to carry, transport
-buta	to rise, ascend, climb (up), creep (up), go up, increase
sumé (essuie-main)	towel, wash cloth
sabóni (savon)	soap
likáyá, ma-	tobacco, cigarette, cigar

NOTES

9.1 Comparison of Intensity

The 'comparison' of intensity, i.e., 'to be very', 'to be too', is expressed by the verb /-leka/, e.g., /Elekí moké/, 'It is too little', 'It's very small', literally 'It surpasses smallness'. See also Note 15.3.

9.2 Definite Condition

Sókó osálí malámu, nakobákisa.

If a proposition is true or affirmed to be true, the if-clause has the immediate past and the result clause the future, e.g., /Sókó osálí malámu, nakobákisa/, 'If you do good work, (then it is certain that) I'll raise your pay'.

9.3 General Prohibitions

Kokómaka nsima ya ntángu tẹ.
Komẹla likáyá tẹ.

The combination of an infinitive plus /tẹ/ is used for general prohibitions, e.g., /Komẹla likáyá tẹ/, 'No smoking'.

9.4 Special Meanings of Derived Stems

okokí kotékísa yangó

Derived stems often have a specialized meaning that cannot be guessed and therefore must be learned as a vocabulary item, e.g., /kotékísa/, 'to resell at a profit', as in /Sókí obongísí ndáko óyo, okokí kotékísa yangó/, 'If you have this house repaired, you can resell it at a profit'.

9.5 /téé/ Followed by /na/

téé na ngonga ya mítánu ya mpókwa

When preceding a temporal phrase, /téé/ is followed by /na/, as in the phrase above, 'until 5:00 P.M.'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Osukólákí lísúsu bílambá? | Have you washed the clothes yet? |
| 2. <u>Nasílí nasukólákí</u> bílambá. | I have just finished washing the clothes. |
| 3. Nasílí <u>kobongísa</u> ndáko. | I've already straightened up the house. |
| 4. <u>Lobéla yé ábongísa</u> ndáko. | Tell him to straighten up the the house. |
| 5. Lobéla yé <u>ángoma bílambá sika óyo.</u> | Tell him to press the clothes right away. |
| 6. Lobá <u>na yé sókó</u> alingí kongoma bílambá sika óyo. | Ask him if he can press the clothes right away. |
| 7. Lobá na yé <u>sókó</u> alingí <u>koyáa leló</u> na mpókwa. | Ask him if he can come this afternoon. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. <u>Oyébí sòkò</u> akoyáa lẹlọ́
na mpókwa? | Do you know if he can come
this afternoon? |
| 9. Oyébí sòkò <u>azalí lisúsu na</u>
ndáko na yé? | Do you know if he is home yet? |
| 10. <u>Ayébí tẹ́, sòkò</u> azalí lisúsu
na ndáko na yé. | He doesn't know if he is still
home. |

PATTERN DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Sòkò oyéí lẹlọ́, nakopésa
yọ́ nkamá mọkọ́. | If you come today, I'll give
you one hundred francs. |
| 2. <u>Sòkí osómbí mọkọ́</u> , nakopésa
yọ́ nkamá mọkọ́. | If you buy one, I'll give you
one hundred francs. |
| 3. Sòkí osómbí mọkọ́, <u>bako-</u>
<u>bongisa mosúsu.</u> | If you buy one, I'll have the
other repaired. |
| 4. <u>Sòkí obongísí ndáko óyo,</u>
bakobongisa mosúsu. | If you have this house repaired,
they will repair the other one. |
| 5. Sòkí obongísí ndáko óyo,
<u>okokí kotékísa yangó.</u> | If you have this house repaired,
you can resell it at a profit. |
| 6. <u>Sòkò ozílí sánzá mọkọ́,</u>
okokí kotékísa yangó. | If you wait a month, you can
sell them at a profit. |
| 7. Sòkí ozílí sánzá mọkọ́,
<u>okokèndẹ na Leó.</u> | If you wait a month, you can
go to Leopoldville. |
| 8. <u>Sòkí ozalí na nkóto mọkọ́,</u>
okokèndẹ na Leó. | If you have a thousand francs,
you can go to Leopoldville. |
| 9. Sòkí ozalí na nkóto mọkọ́,
<u>okokí kosómba bílambá.</u> | If you have a thousand francs,
you can buy some clothes. |
| 10. <u>Sòkò okeí na Leó,</u> okokí
kosómba bílambá. | If you go to Leopoldville, you
can buy some clothes. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Mosá ^á na bísú esílaka na ngonga ya mítánu ya mpókwa. | We get off from work at 5:00 P.M. |
| 2. Mosá ^á na bísú <u>esílí na ntángu malámu.</u> | We finished our work early. |
| 3. <u>Tokómí na ndáko</u> na ntángu malámu. | We arrived home early. |
| 4. Tokómí na ndáko <u>libosó mbúla ébanda konókó.</u> | We arrived home before it started to rain. |
| 5. <u>Tosílísákí kosóm^{ba} bilókó</u> libosó mbúla ébanda konókó. | We finished shopping before it started to rain |
| 6. Tosílísákí kosóm ^{ba} bilókó <u>mpé tokeí na ndáko.</u> | We finished shopping and went home. |
| 7. <u>Mosá^á ekokákí na bísú nyónso té ntína na yangó tokeí na ndáko.</u> | There weren't enough jobs for all of us, and therefore we went home. |
| 8. <u>Mosá^á elekákí makási ntína na yangó tokeí na ndáko.</u> | The work was too hard, and because of that we came home. |
| 9. Mosá ^á elekákí makási <u>ntángu ya komela likáyá ezalákí té.</u> | The work is so hard that there isn't (even) time to smoke. |
| 10. Mosá ^á elekákí makási <u>ntángu ya kolía ezalákí té.</u> | There's so much work that there isn't (even) time to eat. |

1

GRAMMATICAL DRILLS 3

1. Bọ́1 akangólélí ngáí ndáko. The houseboy opened the door
for me.
2. Bọ́1 asukólélí ngáí bılambá. The houseboy washed my clothes.
3. Nasukólélísí bọ́1 bılambá. I had the boy wash my clothes.
4. Nasukólélísí bọ́1 bılambá
ya mbétu. I had the boy wash the sheets.
5. Angomísélí bọ́1 bılambá ya
mbétu. She had the boy iron the sheets.
6. Angomísélí yé elambá ya mésa. She had him iron the tablecloth.
7. Alongólákí elambá ya mésa. She put away the table cloth.
8. Alongólákí basáni ya sika. She put away the new dishes.
9. Azóngísákí basáni ya sika. She put back the new dishes.
10. Akamátákí basáni ya sika. She got out the new dishes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Longólísa bána bılambá
mbíndu na nzótu. Have the children take off
their dirty clothes.
2. Longólísá bána bılambá
mpémbé na nzótu. Have the children take off
their clean clothes.
3. Látísá bána bılambá mpémbé. Have the children put on their
clean clothes.
4. Látísá mamá mpetẹ na yé. Have mother wear her ring.
5. Mẹmẹlé mamá mpetẹ na yé. Bring mother her ring.
6. Mẹmẹlé ngáí sandúku na
likoló. Bring my suitcase up.

7. Butíséla ngái sandúku na
likoló. Have my suitcase brought up.
8. Butíséla ngái sumé na sabóni. Send me some towels and soap.
9. Memele ngái sumé na sabóni. Bring me some towels and soap.
10. Kitíséla ngái sumé na sabóni
na nsé. Send me down some towels and
soap.

PATTERN DRILL 2

1. Naúti (na) mosála. I'm just returning from work.
I'm on my home from work.
I've just returned from work.
2. Naúti kosála. I've just returned from work.
3. Naúti (na) Kinsásá. I've just come from Leopoldville.
I'm on my way from Leopoldville.
4. Nakomi (na) Kinsásá. I've arrived from Leopoldville.
I've come from Leopoldville.
5. Nakei (na) Kinsásá. I'm leaving for Leopoldville.
I'm on the way to Leopoldville.
I'm going to Leopoldville.

PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Nalingí bólongola mafúta
ya libosó bótiya ya sika. I want the oil changed.
2. Nalingí kotámbolisa mwána
na ngái ya mobáli. I want to take my son for a walk.

3. Nalingí kokende kotámbola
na mótuka. I want to go for a drive.
4. Nalingí kotámbwisa mótuka
ya mwána na ngái ya mwási. I want to drive my daughter's
car.
5. Nalingí motu mókó á sukola
mótuka. I want someone to wash my car.

9.6 /libosó/ Plus Subjunctive

Tokómi na ndáko libosó mbúla ébanda konókó.

When nouns such as /libosó/, 'front', are used to introduce temporal clauses, the verb of the temporal clause is in the subjunctive, as in the sentence above, 'We arrived home before it started rain'.

Unit 10

Basic Sentences

- A-
1. Aló! (allô) Hello.
- B-
2. Aló, nání wáná? Hello, who's speaking?
- A-
3. Ngái, Bonifási. This is Boniface.
- B-
4. Díí, Bonifási, olingí
níní? Hi, Boniface, what do you want?
- A-
- tínda to send, order, command
5. Nalingí ótíndela ngái I'd like you to send me your
búuku na yó ya Lingála. Lingala book.
- B-
6. Bóongó ya yó, otíkí wápi? Where did you leave yours?
- A-
- bósana to forget; be mistaken,
make a mistake
- kelási (classe) class, classroom, school
7. Nabósání yangó na kelási. I forgot and left it in the
classroom.

- B-
8. Bóni, nakotíndela yó
yangó na mwána. Boni, I'll send it to you by
my little brother.
- A-
9. Melesi. Thanks.
- B-
10. Likambo tẹ. Don't mention it.
- A-
11. Éẹ, kokanga naínu tẹ! Hey, don't hang up yet!
12. Okẹndẹ wápi lẹlọ na Where are you planning on going
mpókwa? this evening?
- B-
- kana to resolve, intend,
promise, threaten
- kanisa to think, reflect,
- sinemá (cinéma) movies
13. Nakanísí (te) nakokẹndẹ I think I'll go to the movies
na sinemá lẹlọ na mpókwa. this evening.
- A-
14. Olingí tókẹndẹ bísú Would you like for me to go
míbalé? with you?
- B-
- bima to go out, come out, go
for a walk, emerge
15. Éẹ, nalingí, nakobima na Yes, of course, I'm leaving
ngonga ya mwambi. at eight o'clock.

-A-

16. Na ntángu mosúsu. See you then.
 17. Malámu. Fine.

USEFUL PHRASES

Yóká (na) tẹlẹfón.	Answer the phone.
Kangá tẹlẹfón.	Hang up the phone.
Zóngísá (na) tẹlẹfón.	Hang up the phone.
Béngá yé na tẹlẹfón.	Call him up.
Baákobénga yó na tẹlẹfón.	You're wanted on the phone.
Bétéla yé singa.	Call him up.
Tẹlẹfón ezalí kobétẹ.	The telephone is ringing.
Mondéle abéti ngonga.	The European rang the bell.
Mondéle azalí kobétẹ masíní.	The European is typing.
Mondéle azalí kobétẹ mabókó.	The European is clapping his hands.
Mondéle azalí kobétẹ máí.	The European is swimming.
Mondéle azalí kobétẹ bondíkí.	The European is shooting a gun.
Nkómbó na yó nání?	What's your name?
Nkómbó na ngái Ngói.	My name is Ngoi.
Bapési yé Monokomolái.	They nicknamed him Big Mouth.
tẹlẹfón (téléphone)	telephone
-bénga	to call, summon; call, name; order (merchandise)
-bétẹ, -béta	to hit, strike, knock, beat
singa	cord, rope, wire, cable, band, belt

mondéle, m1-	white man, European
masíni (machine)	machine, mechanical instrument, train
bondóki, ma-	gun, rifle
nkómbó, n-	name, honor, reputation
molaí, m1-	long, large, deep, high

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Natíndí mwána mpó na
búuku. | I sent the boy for the book. |
| 2. Natíndí <u>búuku na mwána.</u> | I sent the book to the boy. |
| 3. <u>Nakotíndela yó</u> búuku na
mwána. | I'll send the book to you by
the boy. |
| 4. Nakotíndela yó <u>búuku lóbi</u>
<u>na ntóngó.</u> | I'll send the book to you in
the morning. |
| 5. <u>Natíndéláki yó</u> búuku
lóbi na ntóngó. | I sent the book to you yesterday
morning. |
| 6. Natíndéláki yó <u>matungúlu</u>
<u>lóbi.</u> | I sent you the onions yesterday. |
| 7. <u>Natíndáki yó ósóbela ngái</u>
matungúlu lóbi. | I sent you to buy me some
onions yesterday. |
| 8. Natíndáki yó ósóbela ngái
<u>linzanza ya nyama.</u> | I sent you to buy a can of meat
for me yesterday. |
| 9. <u>Akosóbela yé</u> linzanza
ya nyama. | He will buy a can of meat for
her. |
| 10. Akosóbela yé <u>ndáko.</u> | He will buy the house for her. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nabósání ndáko na yé. | I've forgotten where his house is located. |
| 2. Nabósání, <u>yé nání</u> . | I've forgotten who he is. |
| 3. Nabósání <u>ntángu níni tokómi?</u> | I forgot what time it is. |
| 4. Nabósání <u>nkómbó na yé</u> . | I've forgotten his name. |
| 5. Nabósání <u>bána na yé</u> . | I forgot about his children. |
| 6. Nabósání <u>ndínga alobaka</u> . | I've forgotten what language he speaks. |
| 7. Nabósání <u>mosálá na yé</u> . | I've forgotten what he does (for a living). |
| 8. Nabósání <u>nókó na yé</u> . | I've forgotten who his uncle is. |
| 9. Nabósání <u>epái nátíki búuku</u> . | I've forgotten where I left my book. |
| 10. Nabósání <u>epái ekei</u> . | I've forgotten where he went. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nakobima na ngonga ya motóbá. | I'm going out at six o'clock. |
| 2. <u>Mwási na ngái akokóma</u> na ngonga ya motóbá. | My wife will arrive at six o'clock. |
| 3. Mwási na ngái akokóma <u>na Leó leló na mpókwa</u> . | My wife will arrive in Leopoldville this evening. |
| 4. <u>Bakotika Leó leló</u> na mpókwa. | We will leave Leopoldville this evening. (impersonal we) |
| 5. Bakotika <u>Brazzaville na</u> ngonga ya mókó na ntóngó. | We will leave Brazzaville at 11:00 A.M. (impersonal we) |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. <u>Bána na ngái bazaláki na</u>
Brazzaville na ngonga
ya mókó na ntóngó. | My children were at Brazzaville
at 1:00 A.M. |
| 7. <u>Bána na ngái bazaláki</u>
<u>kokende ntango nakómáki.</u> | My children were leaving when
I arrived. |
| 8. <u>Bakangáki ndáko ntango</u>
nakómáki. | The house was locked up when
I arrived. |
| 9. Bakangáki ndáko <u>mpé motu</u>
<u>azaláki tẹ.</u> | The house was locked and no
one was there. |
| 10. <u>Natúni kási</u> motu azaláki tẹ. | I called out, but no one was
there. |

PATTERN DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Sókó oyáki lelo,</u> mbele
napésáki yó nkamá mókó. | If you had come today, I would
have given you a thousand
francs. |
| 2. <u>Sóki osómbáki mókó,</u> mbele
napésáki yó nkamá mókó. | If you had bought one, I would
have given you a thousand
francs. |
| 3. <u>Sóki osómbáki mókó,</u> mbele
<u>babongísáki mosusu.</u> | If you had bought one, they
would have had the other
repaired. |
| 4. <u>Sóki obongísáki ndáko oyo,</u>
mbele babongísáki mosusu. | If you had had this house
repaired, they would have
repaired the other one. |
| 5. <u>Sóki obongísáki ndáko oyo,</u>
mbele <u>okokáki kotékisa</u>
<u>yangó.</u> | If you had had this house
repaired, you could have
sold it at a profit. |
| 6. <u>Sókó oziláki sanzá mókó,</u>
mbele <u>okokáki kotékisa</u>
<u>yangó.</u> | If you had waited a month,
you would have been able
to sell it at a profit. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 7. <u>Sókó oziláki sánzá mókó,</u>
<u>mbẹle okendéki na Kinsásá.</u> | If you had waited a month, you could have gone to Leopoldville. |
| 8. <u>Sóki ozaláki na nkótó mókó,</u>
<u>mbẹle okendéki na Kinsásá.</u> | If you had had a thousand francs, you could have gone to Leopoldville. |
| 9. <u>Sóki ozaláki na nkótó mókó,</u>
<u>mbẹle okokáki kosómba</u>
<u>bílambá.</u> | If you had had a thousand francs, you could have bought some clothes. |
| 10. <u>Sókó okendéki na Kinsásá</u>
<u>mbẹle okokáki kosómba</u>
<u>bílambá.</u> | If you had gone to Leopoldville, you could have bought some clothes. |

PATTERN DRILL 2

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Moto mókó ayáki kolúka
yó na midí. | Someone came looking for you at lunchtime. |
| 2. Moto mókó <u>asolóláki na yé</u>
<u>lóbí na telefón.</u> | Someone talked to him on the phone yesterday. |
| 3. Moto mókó <u>aakobima na</u>
<u>ngonga ya motóbá.</u> | Someone is going out at six o'clock. |
| 4. Moto mókó <u>atindéláki yó</u>
<u>bondóki.</u> | Someone sent you a rifle. |
| 5. Moto mókó <u>abósáni búuku</u>
<u>na yé ya Lingála.</u> | Someone has forgotten his Lingala book. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Luká numeró na bangó ya
telefón. | Look up their phone number. |
| 2. <u>Lukéla ngái</u> numeró na
bangó ya telefón. | Look up their phone number for me. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. <u>Lukélisá yé</u> numeró ya bangó ya <u>tɛlɛfɔ̃n</u> . | Have her look up their phone number. |
| 4. Lukélisá yé numeró ya bangó ya <u>tɛlɛfɔ̃n mpó na ngái</u> . | Have her look up their phone number for me. |
| 5. <u>Lukélisá yé búuku</u> ya <u>tɛlɛfɔ̃n</u> mpó na ngái. | Have her look for the phonebook for me. |

PATTERN DRILL 3

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ndéngé na yé ya kolía ezalí malámu. | He has good table manners. |
| 2. Ndéngé na yé ya <u>koláta bilambá</u> ezalí malámu. | He always looks nicely dressed. |
| 3. Ndéngé na yé ya <u>koloba</u> ezalí malámu. | His manner of speaking is polite and easy to understand. |
| 4. Ndéngé na yé ya <u>kosála</u> ezalí malámu. | He always does a good job. |
| 5. Ndéngé na yé ya <u>kotámbole</u> ezalí malámu. | He walks well. |

PATTERN DRILL 4

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Nakanísí akoyáa. | I think he's coming. |
| 2. Nakanísí <u>akoyáa té</u> . | I think he's not coming. |
| 3. Nakanísí <u>té akoyáa</u> . | I don't think he's coming. |
| 4. Nakanísí <u>te akoyáa</u> . | I think that he's coming. |
| 5. Nakanísí <u>té te akoyáa</u> . | I don't think that he's coming. |

10.1 Hypothetical Supposition.

Sókó oyákí lẹlọ, mbẹlẹ napésákí yó nkámá mókó.

Hypothetical supposition or contrary-to-fact condition is expressed by the recent past in both clauses and by the particle /mbẹlẹ/ at the beginning of the main clause, e.g., /Sókó oyákí lẹlọ, mbẹlẹ napésákí yó nkámá mókó/, 'If you had come today, I would have given you a thousand francs.'

In the various Lingala dialects, a number of other particles are used in the same way as described above for /mbẹlẹ/, e.g., /tíkí/, /tíké/, /ka/, /kana/, /énte/, /nde/, /mbẹ/.

10.2 'Passive' Plural

Bakotíka Leó lẹlọ na mpókwa.

The third person plural besides expressing what is commonly done (Note 5.9) also is used like impersonal or editorial we in English, e.g., /Bakotíka Leó lẹlọ na mpókwa/, literally and often, 'They will leave Leopoldville this evening', but it is also often used much like English, 'We, i.e., that group of passengers, or my plane, etc., will leave Leopoldville this evening.'

10.3 Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses.

Nakanísí akoyáa.

Verbs in non-initial and subordinate clauses, which refer to a future time, are in the future tense, e.g., /Nakanísí akoyáa/, 'I think he's coming', literally, 'I think he will come'. Speakers of English often make the error of using a present tense in such clauses in Lingala.

Unit 11

Basic Sentences

-A-

- | | | |
|----|------------------|--------------------------|
| | -bẹ̀lẹ̀ | to hurt, suffer, be sick |
| 1. | Óokobẹ̀lẹ̀ wáńí? | Where do you hurt? |

-B-

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | -lála | to sleep, lie down;
stay, remain |
| | mónganga, mí- | physician, European
doctor |
| 2. | Na butú nalálí tẹ̀, mónganga. | I didn't sleep all night,
doctor. |

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------------------|--|
| | mutú, motú, motó, mí- | head; bunch |
| | libumu, ma- | stomach, belly, womb |
| | mobimba, mí- | entire, whole |
| 3. | Mutú, libumu, nzótu
mobimba mpási. | My head, stomach, and whole
body hurts. |

-A-

- | | | |
|----|-----------------------|----------------------|
| | mótọ̀ | fire, hot |
| 4. | Oókoyóka nzótu mótọ̀? | Do you have a fever? |

-B-

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| | wáńí | by no means, no, nothing |
| 5. | Náyéba wáńí, mónganga. | How could I know, doctor? |
| 6. | Nazalí na thermomètre tẹ̀
na ndáko. | I don't have a thermometer at
home. |

-A-

simísí (chemise)

shirt

7. Longóla náino simísí na yó.

Take off your shirt first.

8. Tiyá thermomètre óyo na
monókó.Put this thermometer in your
mouth.

-B-

9. Melesí, mónganga.

O.K., doctor.

-A-

fiéfélé, fiévélé,
(fièvre)

fever

10. Óo, ozalí na fiéfélé, Paul.

Oh, you have a fever, Paul.

-B-

-sálisa

to help, take care of,
employ, instruct

kó

indeed, come on! go
ahead!

11. Sálísá ngái kó mónganga.

Help me, doctor.

-A-

12. Elókó níní oliákí toó
omelákí lóbí?What did you eat or drink
yesterday?

-B-

káka

only, alone

tíi

tea

límpa, ma-

bread, piece of bread

13. Káka tíi na mámpa.

Only some tea and bread.

14. Fíḗfḗlḗ yangó ezalí makási? Is my fever very high?
(The fever, (it is very high?))

-A-

mpenzá

really, truly, only,
completely, alone

15. Tḗ, mpenzá tḗ.

No, not really.

kiníní (quinine)

quinine

16. Kamátá kiníní óyo, mḗlá
míbalé síka óyo, míbalé
mosúsu libosó ya kolála.

Take two of these quinine
pills right away and two
before going to bed.

-B-

17. Melesi, mónganga.

Thanks, doctor.

-A-

-bika

to recover, live,
be recued

18. Sḗkí lóbí obíkí tḗ,
zóngá áwa.

If you have not recovered by
tomorrow, come back.

USEFUL PHRASES

Lḗlḗ mḗkḗlḗ níní?

What day is it?

Lḗlḗ mḗkḗlḗ ya lomíngo.

Today is Sunday.

Lḗlḗ mḗkḗlḗ ya eyenga.

Today is Sunday.

Lḗlḗ mḗkḗlḗ ya mosálá mḗkḗ.

Today is Monday.

Lḗlḗ mḗkḗlḗ ya mosálá míbalé.

Today is Tuesday.

Lḗlḗ mḗkḗlḗ ya mosálá mísátu.

Today is Wednesday.

Lḗlḗ mḗkḗlḗ la mosálá mínei.

Today is Thursday.

Lɛlɔ́ mɔ̀kɔ̀lɔ́ ya mosálá mítánu.	Today is Friday.
Lɛlɔ́ mɔ̀kɔ̀lɔ́ ya mpɔ̀sɔ́.	Today is Saturday.
Mpɔ̀sɔ́ elekí nazalákí na Brazzaville.	I spent last weekend at Brazzaville.
Na nsúka ya mpɔ̀sɔ́ óyo nakokɛ̀ndɛ́ mobémbo na Mpótó.	This weekend I am going on a trip to Europe.
Naákolɛ̀ngɛ̀lɛ́ mobémbo na ntángo ya elanga.	I'm getting ready for a trip during the dry season.
Abélí.	He's sick. He's gotten sick.
Azali na maláli.	He's sick.
Nazokí na mɔ̀kɔ̀ngɔ́.	I've injured my back.
Nazokí na línu.	I've injured a tooth.
Nazokí na mosá.	I've injured my finger.
Azali kosɔ̀nɔ́ bilambá.	She's making clothes.
Azali kosɔ̀nɔ́ mopíla.	She's making an undershirt.
Azali kosɔ̀nɔ́ pataló.	She's making some trousers.
Azali kosɔ̀nɔ́ kalesó.	She's making some shorts.
Azali komeka kazáka.	He's trying on a coat.
Azali komeka ekɔ̀tɪ.	He's trying on a hat.
Azali komeka sosétɪ.	He's trying on some socks.
Azali komeka sapáto.	He's trying on shoes.
lomíngo	Sunday
eyenga	festival, feast day; Sunday, weekend
nsúka, n-	end, termination
-bémba	to travel
mobémbo	trip, journey

Mpótó, Mpútú (Portugal)	Europe
-lɛŋɛɓɛ	to prepare, get ready
elanga	field, garden; dry season, year
maláɓɓi, maláɓi (maladie)	illness, sickness
-zoka	to be injured, be touched
mosaɓi, mi-	finger, toe
-soŋo	to sew, make clothes
mompíla, mi-	undershirt, teeshirt, vest, sweater
pataló (pantalon)	shorts, underwear
-meka	to measure, weigh, try (out), test
kazáka	coat, jacket, vest
ekɔti, bi-	(man's) hat
soséti (chaussette)	sock, stocking
sapáto, sapáta	shoe(s)

NOTES

11.1 Emphatic /wáɓi/

Náyéba wáɓi?

/wáɓi/, 'where', plus the subjunctive expresses emphatic denial of the ability and/or opportunity to do something, e.g., /náyéba wáɓi?/, 'How could I know (if)...?', 'I don't know whether or not...', 'I don't know anything at all about...'.
 11.2 Spelling of /óo/

/óo/ is //oh//.

Lexical Drill 1

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Naákoyóka mutú mpásí. | I have a headache. |
| 2. Naákoyóka <u>libumu</u> mpásí. | I have a stomach ache. |
| 3. Naákoyóka <u>mokongo</u> mpásí | I have a backache. |
| 4. Naákoyóka <u>loboko</u> mpásí. | I have a pain in my hand. |
| 5. Naákoyóka <u>linu</u> mpásí. | I have a toothache. |

Lexical Drill 2

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Naákobɛlɛ na mutú. | I have a headache. |
| 2. Naákobɛlɛ na <u>libumu</u> . | I have a stomach ache. |
| 3. Naákobɛlɛ na <u>mokongo</u> . | I have a backache. |
| 4. Naákobɛlɛ na <u>loboko</u> . | I have a pain in my hand. |
| 5. Naákobɛlɛ na <u>linu</u> . | I have a toothache. |

Lexical Drill 3

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Nasálaka na butú. | I work at night. |
| 2. Nasálaka na <u>móí</u> . | I work during the day. |
| 3. Nasálaka na <u>ntóngó</u> . | I work in the morning. |
| 4. Nasálaka na <u>mpókwa</u> . | I work in the afternoon. |
| 5. Nasálaka na ntángu ya <u>mbúla</u> . | I work during the rainy season. |
| 6. Nasálaka na <u>ntángu ya elanga</u> . | I work during the dry season. |

Lexical Drill 4

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Longólá simísí. | Take off your shirt. |
| 2. Longólá <u>sapáto</u> . | Take off your shoes. |
| 3. Longólá <u>pataló</u> . | Take off your trousers. |
| 4. Longólá <u>kazáka</u> . | Take off your coat. |
| 5. Longólá <u>kazáka ya mbúla</u> . | Take off your raincoat. |

Lexical Drill 5

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Zongísá soséti. | Put on your socks. |
| 2. Zongísá <u>kalesó</u> . | Put on your shorts. |
| 3. Zongísá <u>ekoti</u> . | Put on your hat. |
| 4. Zongísá <u>pull-over</u> . | Put on your sweater. |
| 5. Zongísá <u>cravate</u> . | Put on your tie. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Pésá ngái nsósó mobimba. | Give me a whole chicken. |
| 2. <u>Ókolámba leló na midí</u>
nsósó mobimba. | Today for lunch fix a whole
chicken. |
| 3. Ókolámba <u>nsósó mobimba</u>
<u>leló na midí</u> . | Fix a whole chicken for lunch
today. |
| 4. Ókolámba <u>tíi mpó na mónganga</u> . | Fix some tea for the doctor. |
| 5. <u>Kendé kosómba</u> tíi mpó na
<u>mónganga</u> . | Go buy some tea for the doctor. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. Ayáki ntángo nazaláki kolála. | He arrived while I was asleep. |
| 2. Ayáki ntángo <u>nazaláki kolía</u> . | He came while I was eating. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. <u>Alongóláki bilambá na yé</u>
ntángo nazaláki kolía. | He undressed while I was eating. |
| 4. Alongóláki bilambá na yé
ntángo <u>azaláki libosó</u>
<u>ya mónganga.</u> | He undressed when he was in with the doctor. |
| 5. <u>Azaláki na mpási</u> ntángo
azaláki libosó ya mónganga. | He was suffering when he was in with the doctor. |
| 6. Azaláki na mpási ntángo
<u>akendéki epái ya mónganga.</u> | He was sick when he went to the doctor's. |
| 7. <u>Azaláki na fiéféle</u> ntángo
akendéki epái ya mónganga. | He had a fever when he went to the doctor's. |
| 8. Azaláki na fiéféle ntángo
<u>namónáki yé.</u> | He had a fever when I saw him. |
| 9. Namónáki yé <u>ntángo azaláki</u>
<u>kosálisa tata na yé.</u> | I saw him while he was taking care of his father. |
| 10. <u>Natíndéláki yé mámpa</u> ntángo
azaláki kosálisa tata na yé. | I sent him some bread during the time he was caring for his father. |

Pattern Drill 1

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Sókó simísi na ngái eyáki
mbíndu té, kana tokeí
Kisangani bisú míbalé. | If my shirt hadn't got dirty, then the two of us would go to Stanleyville. |
| 2. Sókó simísi na ngái eyáki
mbíndu té, <u>kana nakeí</u>
<u>kotála mónganga.</u> | If my shirt hadn't got dirty, I would go see the doctor. |
| 3. <u>Sókó nazaláki na maláli</u> kana
nakeí kotála mónganga. | If I were sick, I would go see the doctor. |
| 4. Sókó nazaláki na maláli <u>kana</u>
<u>nakendéki kotála mónganga.</u> | If I had been sick, I would have gone to see the doctor. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. <u>Sókò nabikákí tẹ</u> , kana
nakendékí kotála mónganga. | If I hadn't got better, I would
have gone to the doctor. |
| 6. <u>Sókò nabikákí tẹ</u> , <u>mbẹ nakeí</u>
<u>kotála mónganga</u> . | If I hadn't got better, I would
go to see the doctor. |
| 7. <u>Sókò nazalákí na fiévélé</u> ,
mbẹ nakeí kotála mónganga. | If I had a fever, I would go
see the doctor. |
| 8. <u>Sókò nazalákí na fiévélé</u> ,
<u>mbẹ nalálí</u> . | If I had a fever, I'd go to
bed. |
| 9. <u>Sókò nabélékí</u> , mbẹ nalálí. | If I were sick, I'd go to bed. |
| 10. <u>Sókò nabélékí</u> , mbẹ <u>naméli</u>
<u>tíi ya móto</u> . | If I were sick, I'd drink some
hot tea. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Tíndá motu mọkọ ábéngela
ngáí mónganga. | Send someone to get me a doctor. |
| 2. <u>Lobéla yé ákẹndẹ kotála</u>
<u>mónganga</u> . | Tell him to go see the doctor. |
| 3. Lobéla yé <u>ábéngela ngáí</u>
<u>bangó na telefón</u> . | Tell her to get them on the
phone for me. |
| 4. <u>Natúnákí yé ábéngela ngáí</u>
<u>bangó na telefón</u> . | I asked her to get them on the
phone for me. |
| 5. Natúnákí yé <u>álongola simísí</u>
<u>na yé</u> . | I asked him to take off his
shirt. |
| 6. <u>Balingí álongola simísí</u>
<u>na yé</u> . | They wanted him to take off
his shirt. |
| 7. Balingí <u>koyéba elóko níní</u>
<u>naléí toó naméli lẹlọ</u> . | They wanted to know what I
had eaten and drunk today. |
| 8. <u>Mónganga alingí koyéba elóko</u>
<u>níní naléí toó naméli lẹlọ</u> . | The doctor wanted to know what
I had eaten or drunk today. |

-
9. Mónganga alingí átiya
thermomètre óyo na
monokó. The doctor wanted me to put the
thermometer in my mouth.
10. Ntína níni bolingí átiya
thermomètre óyo na
monokó? Why do you want me to put the
thermometer in my mouth?

Unit 12

Basic Sentences

-A-

-konza

to rule, manage

mokonzi, ba-

chief, king, boss,
supervisor

wa

of, belonging to, at,
from

1. Alobé, óyo azalí mokonzi
wa bisú.

Albert, this is our chief.

-B-

2. Mbóté, Mokonzi.

Good morning, Chief.

-C-

3. Mbóté.

Good morning.

-B-

-fwánda, -fánda

to sit, be seated;
live, reside

4. Fwándá sókó olingí.

Sit down, please.

-C-

5. Melesí.

Thanks.

-B-

nsango, n-

news, report

mbóka, m-

village, region, district;
tribe, race; residence,
address

- | | |
|---|--|
| kólóngónu | health |
| 6. Mokonzí, nsango bóní na mbóka? | Chief, what's new at home? |
| 7. Bangó bángó bazalí nzótu kólóngónu? | Is everybody well? |
| -C- | |
| mpóngí, m- | sleep |
| mongungí, monkungí, n- | mosquito |
| mayéle | understanding, intelligence, intellect, mind, slyness, craftiness, manner, means |
| ndé | only, however, although |
| 8. Nsango tẹ́, káka ndé na butú tozwi mpóngí tẹ́. | Nothing new, however, we haven't gotten any sleep lately. |
| 9. Ngungí áwa mayéle tẹ́. | There are more mosquitoes than you can imagine. |
| -B- | |
| -keba | to pay attention, be attentive |
| -swáa | to bite, sting |
| 10. Kebá na bangungí baswáa bána tẹ́, mpó bakokí kozwá fiéfiéle makási. | Be careful that the mosquitoes don't bite the children because they would get a bad fever. |
| 11. Éé, nayébi. Ntína na yangó nayéi. | Yes, I know. That's why I've come. |

-B-

- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| | nkísí, n- | medicine, charm |
| 12. | Olingí nápésa yó póm̄p̄
na nkísí ya ngungí?
talasé (terrasse)
mpembéni | Do you want me to give you any
sprays with DDT?
ditch, canal
side, edge; around,
near |
| 13. | Ozalı na máı t̄é na talasé
na mpembéni ya ndáko? | Don't you have water in the
ditches around the house? |

-C-

- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| | pıt̄l̄l̄ (pétrole) | kerosene |
| | -sopa | to pour (out), spill;
talk nonsense |
| 14. | É̄é, máı ezalı, kási tozalı
na pıt̄l̄l̄ mpó na kosopa
lıkoló. | Yes there is, but we have enough
kerosene to pour on (the
ditches). |

-B-

- | | | |
|-----|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | 'voiture' | automobile |
| | kúná | over there, yonder |
| 15. | Voiture na yó ezalı kúná? | Is your car out there? |
| 16. | Nakókí kotíısa póm̄p̄ na
voiture? | Can I put the sprays in your
car? |

-C-

- | | | |
|-----|--------------|--------------|
| 17. | É̄é, melesí. | Yes, thanks. |
|-----|--------------|--------------|

-B-

- | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | masanga | wine, beer |
| 18. | Mokonzi, om̄laka masanga
nini? | Sir, what do you usually drink? |

-C-

mbíla, m-

palm nuts, palm tree

19. Namelaka masanga ya mbíla.

I usually drink palm wine.

-B-

20. Andéle! Kenda kozwá
masanga.

André! Go get some drinks.

USEFUL PHRASES

Nazalí na nzala.

I'm hungry.

Nazalí na mpósá ya mái.

I'm thirsty.

Nalembí.

I'm tired.

Nalembí na kókengèle bána.

I'm tired of looking after
children.

Naákoyóka mpóngi.

I'm sleepy.

Naákoyóka molungé.

I'm hot.

Naákoyóka malíli.

I'm cold.

Abekí m̄s̄ol̄o na ȳo.

He borrowed the money from you.

Adéfí mb̄nḡo na ȳo.

He borrowed the money from you.

Abekísí ȳo mb̄nḡo.

He loaned the money to you.

Adéfísí ȳo m̄s̄ol̄o.

He loaned the money to you.

Ayíbí mb̄nḡo na ȳo.

He stole the money from you.

Kangá moyíbí!

Stop the thief!

Landá moyíbí!

Follow the thief!

Ozalí na falánga ya mbuma ya
nkóto m̄k̄o?Do you have change for a
thousand francs?

Kendé kosangisa masanga.

Go mix some drinks.

nzala	hunger, famine
mpósá	urge, desire
-lẹ̀mbẹ	to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done
-kẹ̀ngẹ	to take glances at, watch
-kẹ̀ngẹ̀lẹ	to watch, guard
malíli	cold; shade, cool place
-beka, -défa	to borrow, buy on credit
-bekísa, -défísa	to lend, sell on credit, pay in advance
mọ̀sọ̀lọ, m-	money; wealth, dowry
mbọ̀ngọ, m-	money
-yíba	to steal, take away
moyíbí, ba-	thief
-landa	to follow, pursue; presecute; sue; woo, court
mbuma, m-	fruit; sore, boil; grain, seed; change
-sanga	to assemble, come together

NOTES

12.1 Nouns From Derived Stems.

Nouns as well as verbs are formed from both simple and derived stems. This is extremely productive, i.e., very many words are formed in this manner. In the following lessons, the structure of the various classes is described; but beginning with

this lesson, many such new words are introduced in the exercises without build-up or explanation. Since the structure of such words and the roots and affixes have been previously explained, it is up to the student to recognize and analyze these new words with only the help of the English translation. The student must be able to do this if he is to control Lingala.

12.2 Agent Nouns

The MO-BA prefix class and the /-1/ suffix mark agent nouns, e.g., /mokonzi/, 'ruler', 'manager', 'chief' from /-konza/ 'to rule', 'manage'.

12.3 /wa/: /ya/

Óyo azalí mokonzi wa bísú.

Various alternates of the particle /ya/ occur, e.g., /wa/, /ma/, /mwa/.

12.4 Literary use of /ndé/ to Mark Future

In literary Lingala /ndé/, 'only', 'although', is sometimes used as a future marker, e.g., /ndé nakéi/, 'I will go'. Since this use of /ndé/ is restricted to certain special styles of written material, the student should continue to AVOID it ENTIRELY even if he becomes fluent in Lingala.

12.5 Hyperbole with /...mayéle tẹ/.

Ngungi áwa mayéle tẹ.

To express overabundance of something /...mayéle tẹ/ is used, e.g., /Ngungi áwa mayéle tẹ/, 'There are more mosquitoes than you could imagine/count, than there is sand in the sea.'

12.6 Nouns of Deed or Action, Type 2.

The BO-MA prefix class and the suffix /-1/ form a large number of nouns of deed or action, e.g., /boléi/, 'meal', /boyéi/,

'arrival', 'coming'. Since the plural of nearly all these words is quite rare, it is given in the vocabulary in parentheses, e.g., /bobandi, (ma-)/, 'beginning', 'introduction'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nalingí ópésa ngái falánga
ya mbuma ya nkóto mókó. | I need change for a thousand
francs. |
| 2. Nalingí ópésa ngái <u>mbóngo</u>
<u>nadéfísákí yó.</u> | I need the money I loaned you. |
| 3. <u>Nazalí na besoin</u> ya mbóngo
nadedísákí yó. | I need the money I loaned you. |
| 4. Nazalí na besoin ya <u>pitóló</u>
<u>mpó na máí.</u> | I need some kerosene for water. |
| 5. <u>Ayéí kotúna</u> pitóló mpó
na máí. | He has come to ask for kerosene
for spreading on water. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Nkísí ya ngungi ya binú ekokí. | You have enough DDT. |
| 2. <u>Essence</u> ya bisú ekokí. | We have enough gasoline. |
| 3. <u>Mosoló</u> ya bangó ekokí. | They have enough money. |
| 4. <u>Bilambá</u> ya yé bikokí. | She has enough clothes. |
| 5. <u>Masanga</u> ya yó makokí. | You have enough beer. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mokonzí alobélí ngáí te
nákendé kosómba nsósó.
Bakonzí balobélí bisú te
tókendé kosómba nsósó. | The chief told me to go buy a
chicken.
The chiefs told us to go buy
some chickens. |
| 2. Mosáli afwándí epái ya
ndáko.
Basáli bafwándí epái ya
ndáko. | The worker is sitting by the
house.
The workers are sitting by
the house(s). |
| 3. Mosálelí akolámbela yó
nyama.
Basálelí bakolámbela binú
nyama. | The servant will prepare the
meat for you.
The servants will prepare the
meat for you. |
| 4. Mwána óyo ya mobáli ayébí
nkómbó ya mosómbi té.
Bána óyo ya mibáli bayébí
nkómbó ya basómbi té. | This boy doesn't know the name
of the purchaser.
These boys don't know the
names of the purchasers. |
| 5. Motéki aákofwándaka nsima
ya bilókó na yé.
Batéki baákofwándaka nsima
ya bilókó na bangó. | The trader is sitting behind
his things.
The traders are sitting behind
their things. |
| 6. Motáli alingí kotíkala té
mpó na mbúla.
Batáli balingí kotíkala
té mpó na mbúla. | The spectator didn't want to
stay because of the rain.
The spectators didn't want to
stay because of the rain. |

7. Moyékoli azaláki na búuku moké. The student had a small book.
Bayékoli bazaláki na búuku miké. The students had small books.
8. Molobeli atúni motu óyo motúna. The speaker asked the man a question.
Balobeli batúni batu óyo mitúna. The speakers asked the men questions.
9. Mosálisi apésáki mwási nkisi. The assistant gave the woman the medicine.
Basálisi bapésáki básí nkisi. The assistants gave the women the medicine.
10. Tata na ngái azalí na mosála tẹ. My father doesn't have a job.
Batatá na bisú bazalí na misálá tẹ. Our fathers don't have jobs.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Natíndéli mokonzi mafúta na mwána. I sent the chief some oil by the boy.
2. Natíndéli basáli nyama. I sent the workers some meat.
3. Natíndí basáli nyama. I sent the workers for some meat.
4. Natíndí voiture ékẹde kokamata mokonzi. I sent the car for the chief.
5. Atúni ngái voiture mpó ákẹde kokamata mokonzi. He asked me for a car to go get the chief.
6. Atúni ngái voiture mpó ákẹde na Kinsásá. He asked me for a car to go to Leopoldville.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 7. <u>Atúni ngái nátinga pómpí</u>
na Kinsásá. | He asked me to send the spray
guns to Leopoldville. |
| 8. <u>Atúni ngái nátinga pómpí</u>
<u>na ndáko na yé na Kinsásá.</u> | He asked me to send the sprays
to his house in Leopoldville. |
| 9. <u>Natikáli</u> na ndáko na yé na
Kinsásá. | I'm staying at his house in
Leopoldville. |
| 10. Natikáli <u>na mosálá.</u> | I'm staying at work. I have
stayed at work. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. M _o so _n i asómbi masíni ya
koson _o bilambá. | The tailor bought a sewing
machine. |
| Basoni basómbi masíni ya
koson _o bilambá. | The tailors bought sewing
machines. |
| 2. Motámbwisi ya mótuka
akokitisa mobótisi
na lopítálo. | The chauffeur will take the
midwife to the hospital. |
| Batámbwisi ya mítuka
bakokitisa babótisi
na lopítálo. | The chauffeurs will take the
midwives to the hospital. |
| 3. Molámbi ayébi ntángu ya
bokómi ya mokonzi té. | The cook doesn't know the time
of the arrival of the chief. |
| Balámbi bayébi ntángu ya
bokómi ya bakonzi té. | The cooks don't know the hour
of arrival of the chiefs. |
| 4. Momemí aákotiela ngái
sandúku na mótuka. | The porter is putting the trunk
in the car for me. |
| Bamemí baákotiela bisú
basandúku na mítuka. | The porters are putting the
trunks in the cars for us. |

5. Moyémbı ayébı́sı́ mokonzi
botı́kı́ ya koyémba.
Bayémbı bayébı́sı́ bakonzi
botı́kı́ ya koyémba.
- The singer submitted his resignation to the choral director.
- The singers submitted their resignation(s) to the choral director.
6. Mobóti na ngáı́ atúni ntángo
ya bokęı́ ya nõkõkõ.
Babóti na bı́sú batúni
ntángo ya bokęı́ ya banõkõkõ.
- My parent asked the departure time of my uncle.
- Our parents asked the departure time of our uncles.
7. Moyékoli aákoyékola ndéngé
ya bobótı́sı́.
Bayékoli baákoyékola ndéngé
ya bobótı́sı́.
- The student is studying obstetrics.
- The students are studying obstetrics.
8. Bomekı́ ya mótuca na ngáı́
ya síká ezaláki lóbi.
Bomekı́ ya mítuca na bı́sú
ya síká ezaláki lóbi.
- I tried out my new car yesterday.
- We tried out our new cars yesterday.
9. Na nsıma ya boléı́, molobelı́
azaláki kolobela batu mpó
na bobandi ya kelási.
Na nsıma ya boléı́, balobelı́
bazaláki kolobela batu mpó
na bobandi ya kelási.
- After the meal, the speaker talked to the people about the beginning of school.
- After the meal, the speakers talked to the people about the beginning of school.
10. Mobõngı́sı́ ya mótuca akangı́
mótuca mpó na motu ya
makolo.
Babõngı́sı́ ya mítuca bakangı́
mıtuca mpó na batu ya
makolo.
- The mechanic stopped the car because of a pedestrian.
- The mechanics stopped the cars because of the pedestrians.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Libosó na boléi, naméli
likáyá mókó. | Before the meal, I smoked a
cigarette. |
| 2. Libosó na boléi, <u>nasukóli</u>
nzótu. | Before the meal, I took a bath. |
| 3. <u>Libosó ya bokéi</u> , nasukóli
nzótu. | Before leaving, I took a bath. |
| 4. Libosó ya bokéi, <u>atíi</u>
<u>mopepe na mótuka</u> . | Before leaving, he aired up the
tires. |
| 5. <u>Nsima ya bokangi mótuka</u> ,
atíi mopepe. | After stopping the car, he
aired up the tire(s). |
| 6. Nsima ya bokangi mótuka,
<u>abimí</u> . | After stopping the car, he
got out. |
| 7. <u>Nsima ya kotála bipái</u>
<u>na bipái</u> , abimí. | After looking all around, he
got out. |
| 8. Nsima ya kotála bipái na
bipái, <u>azóngi na mótuka</u> . | After looking all around, he
got back in the car. |
| 9. <u>Nsima ya kosolola</u> , azóngi
na mótuka. | After talking a while, he got
back in the car. |
| 10. Nsima ya kosolola, <u>akóti</u>
<u>na ndáko lisúsu</u> . | After talking a while, he went
back in the house again. |

Question and Answer Drill 1

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ndinga na yó ya mbóka níni?
Ndinga na ngái ya mbóka
<u>ezali Lingála</u> . | What is your native language?
My native language is Lingala. |
| 2. Oyéi kosála níni?
Nayéi <u>kotúna yó bolimbisi</u> . | What did you come for?
I've come to ask your forgiveness. |

3. Ndéngé na yé ya bozali ezali bóni?
Ndéngé na yé ya bozali ezali malámu.
What kind of personality does he have?
He has a nice personality.
4. Bolongoli mokonzi na mosála na yé ezali makási?
Éé, bolongoli mokonzi na mosála na yé ezali makási.
Is the removal of a chief difficult?
Yes, the removal of a chief is difficult.
5. Botáli libosó ya lininisa ezali kitókó?
Té, botáli libosó ya lininisa ezali kitókó té.
Is the view from the window beautiful?
No, the view from the window isn't beautiful.
6. Bakéngeli bazali wápi?
Bakéngeli batélemi libosó ya ndáko monéne.
Where are the guards?
The guards are standing in front of the big building.
7. Nani azali kosangisa masanga?
Mwana ya mosála azali kosangisa masanga.
Who is mixing the drinks?
The house boy is fixing the drinks.
8. Olingi nápésa yó nini?
Nalingi ópésa ngái nkisi ya ngungi.
What do you need?
I need some DDT.
9. Ozwi nsango ya mbóka?
Eé, leló nazwi nsango ya mbóka.
Have you had any news from home lately?
Yes, today I received news from home.
10. Óyo kúná ndáko na yó?
Éé, yangó ndáko na ngái.
Is that your house over there?
Yes, that's my house.

Unit 13

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Oókosála níni?

What are you doing?

-B-

-koma

to write, copy, enroll,
engrave, sign

moníngá, ba-

friend, companion, peer,
colleague

mokandá, m1-

letter, paper, document,
sheet of paper2. Naákokomela moníngá na
ngái mokandá.

I'm writing my friend a letter.

mosíká, (m1-)

distance, distant, removed,
far off

-yókana

to hear (from) one another,
understand each other,
agree3. Mikóló mikómí mosíká
toókoyókana lisúsu
nsango té.It's been a long time since
we've heard from one another.

-A-

4. Óyo níni?

What's this?

-B-

chec

check

magazíni (magasin)

department store

5. Óo, nabósání kotínda chec
na magazíni.Oh, I forgot, to send a check
to the department store.

- nyongo, n- debt
6. Batúní ngáí sòkò nakozila They asked me why I'm waiting
níní mpó nakofúta nyongo before I pay them.
na bangó.
- A-
7. Osómbákí níní? What did you buy?
- B-
- esálelì, bī- tool, instrument
taliyé, talyé (atelier) shop, workshop, workroom
8. Mwáa bisálelì mòkò mpó na Just some tools for my workshop.
taliyé na ngáí.
- A-
- esálelo, bī- shop, workshop, workroom,
place to/for work
9. Osálaka níní na esálelo What do you make in your shop?
na yó?
- B-
- ekeko, bī- picture, sculpture, statue
mpémbé, m- white; chalk; ivory
nzoku, n- elephant
libáyá, ma- wood, board
10. Bikeko ya mpémbé ya nzoku Sculpture in ivory and wood.
ná ya mabáyá.
- A-
11. Nakokí kotála yango na Can I visit your shop during
ntángu ya mosálá? working hours?

-B-

liloba, ma-

word; order (for
merchandise)

12. Mpó na níni tété?

Why not?

13. Tozalí na bilókó míngi tété
ya kotéka, kási okokí
kopésa maloba mpó tósála
elókó olingí.We don't have many things to
sell, but you can order what
you want us to make.

-A-

14. Ntángu bóni okokí kozíla
mpó ózwá yangó?How long do you have to wait
for them?

-B-

15. Káka mikóló míbalé toó
mísátu.

Only two or three days.

-B-

16. Bofungolaka ntángu níni?

What hours are you open?

-A-

17. Na huit heures tíi na midí,
mpé na trois heures tíi
na sept heures ya mpókwa.From eight until noon, and from
three until seven in the after-
noon.

-B-

18. Malámu. Lóbí.

Fine. See you tomorrow.

-A-

19. Lóbí.

See you tomorrow.

USEFUL PHRASES

Kiliyó ebúkání.	The pencil is broken.
Ekomeli ya mái ya mokandá ebúkání.	The pen is broken.
Lifungóla ebúkání.	The key is broken.
Pósitá efungwamaka ntángu níní?	What hours is the post office open?
Témbèlè na kátí ya Kinsásá ntálo bóní?	How much does it cost to send a letter within Leopoldville?
Témbèlè na Kinsásá tíí na Kisangani ntálo bóní?	How much does it cost to send a letter from Leopoldville to Stanleyville?
Palató atíkí mikandá.	The postman left some mail.
Palató ayéí na mikandá.	The postman brought the mail.
Esíká ya kobwáka mikandá ezalí na nsúka ya balabálá.	There's a mail box/post office on the corner of the street.
Nazwí masíní ya koseba kilió na esíká ya kotéka búuku.	I got a pencil sharpener at the bookstore.
Naséngí bifándeli mpó na kelási.	I ordered some seats/desks for the school.
Libóké etíndámí na avió.	The package was sent by airmail.
kiliyó, kilió (crayon)	pencil; legal charges, costs
ekomeli, bi-	writing instrument, writing material
lifungóla, ma-	key
pósitá (poste)	post office, postal service, mail box

témbèlè (timbre)	postage-stamp
kátı	in, inside (of), in the middle of, among, center, middle, inside
ntálo, ntálu, n-	price, number
palató	errand boy, messenger, postman
-bwáka	to throw; reject, renounce, throw-out, disown
balabála	street, (broad) road
-seba	to sharpen, file, whet; draw palm wine
-séngè, -sénga	to ask for, beg, order (merchandise)
efándelı, bı-	seat, chair
libóké, ma-	bunch, group, pack, package, swarm
avió (avion)	airplane, airmail

NOTES

13.1 Passive

Libóké etíndámı na avió.

The passive extension /-am/ refers to something done by someone/something other than the subject of the verb, e.g., /Mõnõkõ ya ndáko ekangwámı na mwána/. 'The door is/has been opened by the child.' The passive also occurs without an expressed agent, i.e., without /na/ and the doer of the action, e.g., /Libóké etíndámı na avió/, 'The package was sent by airplane.' /na avió/ is not the agent, but the means used by the unexpressed agent.

/-am-/ after primary vowels in some verbs is /-em-/, e.g., /Mɔ̃nɔ̃kɔ̃ ya ndáko ekangémí/, 'The door has been closed'. /-am-/ after secondary vowels is /-ɛm-/ or /-ɔm-/ as determined by vowel harmony.

13.2 Ingressive Stative, Reciprocal

Míkɔ̃lɔ̃ míkómí mosíká toókoyókana lísúsu nsango tɛ́.
Nabósání kotínda chec na magaziní.

The ingressive stative extension /-an-/ refers to something that gets done, reaches or attains a certain state, becomes in a certain condition often with the help of the subject of the verb. The ingressive stative can be very confusing to speakers of English and French because it translates into a number of their grammatical categories, as (1) a passive, (2) a stative, (3) a reciprocal, or (4) a reflexive. But regardless of the translation, the student must remember that the basic idea is that of becoming or arriving at the state given in the verb stem, e.g., /Namónání na yé./, 'I was seen by him', or 'I got seen by him', 'I was seen with him', or 'I got seen with him', 'We saw each other', or 'we got seen by each other'. Consider also /Mɔ̃nɔ̃kɔ̃ ya ndáko ekangwání./ 'The door is open', 'The door got open', 'The door has come open'.

The plural of the ingressive stative is usually reciprocal, i.e., 'to do for one another', as in the dialogue /Míkɔ̃lɔ̃ míkómí mosíká toókoyókana lísúsu nsango tɛ́/, 'we haven't heard from each other for a long time.', or 'we haven't been heard from (let ourselves be heard from) for a long time.'

13.3 /míkɔ̃lɔ̃ míkómí mosíká/

/míkɔ̃lɔ̃ míkómí mosíká/, 'It has been a long time since that'..., is a fixed expression, i.e., no changes or substitutions can be made in this construction, e.g., /mbúla/, 'years', cannot be substituted for /míkɔ̃lɔ̃/, 'days'.

13.4 Instrument Nouns, Type 1

esálel₁

Instrument nouns of most commonplace things have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-₁/ suffix and mean the instrument or tool of the base, e.g., /esálel₁/, literally 'doer', 'thing to do with', i.e., 'tool', 'instrument', and /ezalel₁/, 'thing to sit in', 'seat', 'chair'.

13.5 Locative Nouns, Type 1

esálelo

Locative nouns have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-o/ suffix and mean the place to do or for doing something, e.g., /esálelo/, literally 'place to work', i.e., 'shop', 'workroom'.

13.6 Avoidance of Base Repetition

Mwáa bisálel₁ mókó mpó na taliyé na ngái.

Lingala usually avoids the repetition of the same base in a sentence. In the sentence above from the dialogue, the French loanword /taliyé/, 'workshop', is used instead of /esálelo/, 'workshop', because the base /-sál-/ is used earlier in the sentence in /bisálel₁/, 'tools'.

The same applies to having a verb and its object from the same base. Any such combination as 'to walk a walk', will be avoided and words from different bases will be used or the object will be omitted. However, it is not uncommon for both the subject and the verb to have the same base.

13.7 Instrument Nouns, Type 2

Some instrument nouns are marked by the LI-MA prefix class and either an /-a/ or /-á/ suffix, e.g., /lifungóla/, 'key', and /lisálá/, 'cultivated field'.

13.8 Instrument Nouns, Type 3

Some abstract instrument nouns have the LI-MA prefixes and an /-1/ suffix, e.g., /litálísi/, 'demonstration', 'a showing'.

13.9 Expletive

Bakosála litálísi na lísálá.

The third person plural is used as an expletive, i.e., translates 'there is/are', e.g., /Bakosála litálísi na lísálá./, 'There will be a demonstration'. Compare Note 10.2.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize all verbs.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nazalí kokomela moníngá
na ngái mokandá. | I'm writing a letter to my
friend. |
| Tozalí kokomela baníngá
na bísú mikandá. | We are writing letters to
our friends. |
| 2. Asómbákí mwáa esáleli mókó
mpó na taliyé na yé. | He bought a tool for his shop. |
| Basómbákí mwáa bisáleli
mókó mpó na bataliyé
na bangó. | They bought some tools for
their shops. |
| 3. Motu óyo azalí kosála
ezaleli ya mabáyá. | The man is making a wooden
chair. |
| Batu óyo bazalí kosála
bizaleli ya mabáyá. | The men are making chairs
out of wood. |
| 4. Bakosála litálísi na
lísálá ya Pierre. | There will be a demonstration
in Pierre's field. |
| Bakosála matálísi na
masálá ya Pierre. | There will be demonstrations
in Pierre's fields. |

- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| 5. | Mokonzi atíndí mponokó
na mwána.
Bakonzi batíndí minokó
na bána. | The chief sent a message by
the boy.
The chiefs sent messages by
the boys. |
| 6. | Okokí kopésa ngái lisálisí?
Bokokí kopésa bisú lisálisí? | Can you give me some help?
Can you give us some help? |
| 7. | Tatá atíndélí ngái mokandá
na mbóngó na kátí.
Batatá batíndélí bisú
mikandá na mbóngó na kátí. | My father sent me a letter
with money in it.
Our fathers sent us letters
with money in them. |
| 8. | Atúni na motu óyo epái
alálaka.
Batúni na batu óyo epái
balálaka. | He asked the man where he
lives.
They asked the men where they
lived. |
| 9. | Naákokomela moníngá na
ngái mokandá.
Toókokomela baníngá na
bisú mikandá. | I'm writing a letter to my
friend.
We are writing letters to our
friends. |
| 10. | Apésí yó esálelí.
Bapésí binú bisálelí. | He gave you the tool.
They gave you the tools. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | Naákokomela moníngá na
ngái mokandá. | I'm writing my friend a letter. |
| 2. | Naákokoma <u>nkómbó ya</u>
<u>bayékoli</u> . | I'm writing the names of the
students. |
| 3. | <u>Magazíni nyónso</u> bizalí
<u>na nkómbó ya bayékoli</u> . | All the stores have the names
of the students. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Magazíni nyónso bízalı na <u>bikeko ya miké ya mabáyá.</u> | All the stores have small wood statues. |
| 5. <u>Áwa basálaka</u> bikeko ya miké ya mabáyá. | Here they make little wooden statues. |
| 6. Áwa basálaka <u>mikolo nyónso.</u> | Here they work every day. |
| 7. <u>Áwa batékaka mpémbé ya nzoku</u> mikolo nyónso. | Here they sell ivory every day. |
| 8. Áwa batékaka mpémbé ya nzoku <u>káka mokolo ya mpóso.</u> | Here they sell ivory only on Saturday. |
| 9. <u>Nazalaka na ndáko</u> káka mokolo ya mpóso. | I'm at home only on Saturday. |
| 10. Nazalaka na ndáko <u>nsima ya ngonga ya nsambo ya mpókwa.</u> | I am home after seven P.M. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Nayékwisi bayékoli kokoma. | I taught the students how to write. |
| 2. <u>Alobi na</u> bayékoli bákoma. | She told the students to write. |
| 3. Alobi na <u>bána básálısana.</u> | She told the children to help each other. |
| 4. <u>Tolingi</u> bána básálısana. | We want the children to help each other. |
| 5. Tolingi <u>kolálısa bána.</u> | We want to put the children to sleep. |
| 6. <u>Bazalı</u> kolálısa bána. | They are putting the children to bed. |
| 7. Bazalı <u>kobımisa voiture.</u> | They are getting the car out. |

- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| 8. | <u>Azali</u> kobimisa voiture. | He is getting the car out. |
| 9. | Azali <u>kobimisela ngái</u>
voiture. | He is getting the car out for
me. |
| 10. | <u>Nalobéli yé</u> abimisela
ngái voiture. | I asked him to get the car out
for me. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | | |
|-----|--|---|
| 1. | Sika óyo ekómí ntángu
ya mosálá. | It's time to start to work. |
| 2. | <u>Sika áwa</u> ekómí ntángu
ya mosálá. | It's time to start to work. |
| 3. | Sika áwa <u>tókende ntángu</u>
<u>ekokí.</u> | It's time to go. |
| 4. | <u>Sika óyo</u> <u>tókende</u> ntángu
ekokí. | It's time to go. |
| 5. | <u>Ntángu ya kokende</u> ekokí. | It's time to go. |
| 6. | Ntángu ya <u>kolía</u> ekokí. | It's time to eat. |
| 7. | Ntángu ya <u>kosálisa bána</u>
ekokí. | It's time to help the children. |
| 8. | Ntángu ya <u>kobanda kelási</u>
ekokí. | It's time to start class.
It's time to leave for school. |
| 9. | Ntángu ya <u>kofungola</u>
<u>magazíni</u> ekokí. | It's time to open the store. |
| 10. | Ntángu ya <u>kokanga magazíni</u>
ekokí. | It's time to close the store. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | | |
|-----|---|--|
| 1. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko ekangémi. | The door is closed.
The door has been closed. |
| 2. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>ekangwáni</u> . | The door is open.
The door has come open. |
| 3. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>ekangwámí</u> . | The door is opened.
The door has been opened. |
| 4. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>ezaláki</u>
<u>ya kokangwama ntángu</u>
<u>nakómáki</u> . | The door was open(ed) when
I arrived. |
| 5. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>ezalí</u>
<u>kokangwana</u> . | The door comes open.
The door won't stay shut. |
| 6. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>ezalí</u>
<u>kokangwana</u> . | The door opens/swings/pushes
open. (though it is closed). |
| 7. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>ezalí ya</u>
<u>kokangwama t̄e</u> . | The door is closed (but not
locked). |
| 8. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>ezalí ya</u>
<u>kokangwama</u> . | The door is opened back/stand-
ing open. |
| 9. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>efungwámáki</u>
<u>na moyékwisi</u> . | The door was opened by the
teacher. |
| 10. | M̄on̄ok̄o ya ndáko <u>efungwamaka</u>
<u>ntángu nyónso na moyékwisi</u> . | The door is always opened by
the teacher. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | Mikandá mikomámáki na
bayékoli. | The letters were written by
the students. |
| 2. | <u>Bikeko bisómbámáki</u> na
bayékoli. | The statues were purchased by
the students. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. Bikeko bisómbámákí <u>na</u>
<u>palató</u> . | The statues were bought by
the postman. |
| 4. <u>Mafungóla mazwámákí na</u>
<u>palató</u> . | The keys were taken by the
postman. |
| 5. Mafungóla mazwámákí <u>na</u>
<u>basáli</u> . | The keys were taken by the
workmen. |
| 6. <u>Témbelẹ bimónámákí na</u>
<u>basáli</u> . | The stamps were found by the
workmen. |
| 7. <u>Témbelẹ bimónámákí na</u>
<u>moníngá na ngái</u> . | The stamps were found by my
friend. |
| 8. <u>Líbóké etíndámí na moníngá</u>
<u>na ngái</u> . | The package was sent by my
friend. |
| 9. Líbóké etíndámí <u>na avió</u> . | The package was sent by airmail. |
| 10. Líbóké etíndámí <u>na</u>
<u>Bruxelles mpó na Kongó</u> . | The package was sent from
Brussels to the Congo. |

Unit 14

Basic Sentences

-A-

mbala, m-

time, times, often,
mostly

1. Mbala bóńi basálaka election How often do you have elections
na mbóka na bínú? in your country?

-B-

2. Election ya président too Election for president or for
ya bourgmestres? mayors?

-A-

3. Nyónso míbalé. Both.

-B-

4. Óyo ya président ezalí na The one for president is every
nsima ya mbúla mínei four years, the one for
nyónso, óyo ya babourg- mayors every two years.
mestres nsima ya mbúla
míbalé.

-A-

5. Bozalí na baParlementaires How many members of Parliament
bóni? are there?

-B-

6. Nakanísí ntúkú nsambo too I believe seventy or eighty.
mwambe.

-A-

'voter'

to vote

7. Banáni bakokí kovoter
na election? Who can vote in the election?
- B-
8. Batu bazalí na mbúla ntúkú
míbalé na mókó tii na
likoló. Those who have reached the age
of twenty-one and over.
- A-
- ekólo, b1- tribe, race, region of
origin, people of same
place or language
9. Mpó na kovoter, batálaka
ekólo? With regard to voting, is tribe
considered?
- B-
- se that...
10. Té, wáná té, káka se mbúla
na ndéngé ya motu okovoter. No, not that, only the age and
competence of the person you
will vote for.
- A-
11. Election ya nsima ezalákí
ntángo nini? When was the last election?
- B-
12. Ezalákí na mbúla eleki. It was last year.
- A-
13. Election yangó ezalákí
mpó ya président toó ya
babourgrestres? Was that election for president
or for mayors?

-B-

14. Ezaláki mpó ya bourgmestres. It was for mayors.
15. Mpó ya président, óyo mbúla
mísátu. The one for president was
three years ago.

USEFUL PHRASES

Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kobéte ndembó.	He's teaching the children how to play soccer.
Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kozínga bolangítu.	He's showing the children how to fold the blankets.
Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kosakana.	He's showing the children how to amuse themselves.
Ekipe ya Lovaniúm elóngi na lisanu.	The team from Lovanium won the game.
Ayambi ndembó.	He caught the ball.
Atíi monyámá.	He made a goal.
Atíi ntembe na ngái.	He discussed it with me.
Ndámbo ya batu bamatáki na masúwa.	Part of the men got on the boat.
Ndámbo ya batu babimáki na masúwa.	Part of the men got off the boat.
Ndámbo ya batu bakótáki na otobísi.	Part of the men got in the bus.
Ndámbo ya batu bakítáki na otobísi.	Part of the men got out of the bus.
-laka	to give advice; set a time; promise; order
-lakisa	to show, display, teach, instruct

ndembó, n-	rubber, ball
-zínga	to fold (up), roll (up); surround, encircle
bolangítí, bolangísí	blanket
-sakana, sana	to play, amuse oneself, have a good time
ekípe (équipe)	team, squad, crew, gang
-lóngá	to be successful, win, be proved right
lisano, lisanu, ma-	game
-yamba	to accept, believe, receive, entertain, welcome, guide, steer, catch
monyámá, mí-	net
ntembe, n-	discussion, argument, doubt, suspicion, hesitation
ndámbo, n-	part, piece, share, half
masúwa	boat, ship
otobísí (autobus)	bus

14.1 Miscellaneous Nouns

ekólo ekeko

A number of different kinds of nouns, such as collectives and human artifacts, are marked by the E-BI prefix class and an /-o/ or /-u/ suffix, e.g., /ekólo/, 'tribe', 'region or origin', /-kóla/, 'to grow (up)', /ekeko/, 'picture', 'statue', /-keka/, 'to see', 'look', 'examine'.

14.2 /se/

/se/ introduces subordinate clauses and freely substitutes with /te/. Compare Note 6.5

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| 1. | Mbala bóńi basálaka election? | How often are elections held? |
| 2. | Mbala bóńi <u>osílí okeí na Kongó?</u> | How many times have you been in the Congo? |
| 3. | Mbala bóńi osílí okeí <u>na Kísanganí?</u> | How many times have you been to Stanleyville? |
| 4. | <u>Mbúla bóńi osálí na Kísanganí?</u> | How long have you been in Stanleyville? |
| 5. | Mbúla bóńi osálí <u>na Matadí?</u> | How long have you been in Matadi? |
| 6. | <u>Ntángo níńi ozalákí na Matadí?</u> | How long were you at Matadi? |
| 7. | Ntángo níńi ozalákí <u>na Leó?</u> | How long were you at Leopoldville? |
| 8. | <u>Mbúla bóńi okosála na Leó?</u> | How long will you be in Leopoldville? |
| 9. | Mbúla bóńi okosála <u>na Bóma?</u> | How long will you be in Boma? |
| 10. | <u>Mikolo bóńi okosála mpó okokóma na Bóma?</u> | How long will it be until you arrive in Boma? |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | Batu nyónsọ míńeí balekí mbúla ntúkú míńeí. | All four of the men are over forty years old. |
| 2. | Batu nyónsọ míńeí <u>bazalákí áwa mbúla elekí.</u> | All four of the men were here last year. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. <u>Ndámbo ya batu bazaláki</u>
áwa mbúla elekí. | Some of the men were here last year. |
| 4. Ndámbo ya batu <u>bakozala</u>
áwa mbúla ekoyáa. | Some of the men will be here next year. |
| 5. <u>Bikólo nyónso</u> bikozala
áwa mbúla ekoyáa. | All of the tribe will be here next year. |
| 6. Bikólo nyónso <u>bızaláki</u>
na ndáko ya mokonzi. | The whole tribe was present at the chief's house. |
| 7. <u>Bourgmestre ya Leó deux</u>
azaláki na ndáko ya
mokonzi. | The mayor of Leopoldville II was at the chief's house. |
| 8. Bourgmestre ya Leó deux
<u>aákokonza malámu.</u> | The mayor of Leopoldville II does a good job of managing. |
| 9. <u>Mokonzi ya mbóka ya bisú</u>
aákokonza malámu. | The chief of our village rules well. |
| 10. Mokonzi ya mbóka ya bisú
<u>alingí ndáko ya sika.</u> | The chief of our village would like to have a new house. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Liyébısı etíndámí na
molakısı. | The announcement was sent to
(or by) the teacher. |
| Mayébısı matíndámí na
balakısı. | The announcements were sent to
(or by) the teachers. |
| 2. Mòbongısı bíbendé abosánáki
ebéteḽi na yé. | The mechanic forgot his hammer. |
| Babongısı bíbendé babosánáki
bíbéteḽi na bangó. | The mechanics forgot their
hammers. |

3. Ekangeli ya m̄n̄ok̄o ebúkání. The door handle got broken.
 Bikangeli ya m̄n̄ok̄o bibúkání. The door handles got broken.
4. Lifúta na ngái ekokí t̄e na My salary isn't sufficient for
 libótá mobimba. my entire family.
 Mafúta na b̄isú mokokí t̄e na Our salaries aren't sufficient
 mabótá mobimba. for our entire families.
 There isn't enough cooking oil
 for our entire families.
5. Na makanisi na yé, alingí It's his intention to give
 kopésa ndingisa ya kobina. permission for the dance.
 Na makanisi na bangó, balingí It's their intention to give
 kopésa ndingisa ya kobina. permission for the dance.
6. Mokomi ya mokandá óyo The writer of this document
 ayébání t̄e. is unknown.
 Bakomi ya mikandá óyo The writers of these documents
 bayébání t̄e. are unknown.
7. Atiyáni ntembe na ngái. He discussed it with me.
 Batiyani ntembe na b̄isú. They discussed it with us.
8. Azalí kozila mbótama ya She is awaiting the birth of
 mwána na yé ya libosó. her first child.
 Bazalí kozila mbótama ya They are waiting for the birth
 bána na bangó ya libosó. of their first children.
9. Moyékoli akanisi te kelási The students thought school
 ekangémi. was closed.
 Bayékoli bakanisi te bakelasi The students though the schools
 bikangémi. were closed.

10. Mosáleli aákopalola mbálá. The servant is going to peel
the potato.
- Basáleli baákopalola mbálá. The servants are going to peel
the potatoes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Náni azalí mokonzi ya
mbóka ya binú? Who is the chief of your
village?
2. Banáni bazalí na mokonzi
ya mbóka ya binú? Who is with the chief of your
village?
3. Banáni bakokí kovoter na
election? Who can vote in the elections?
4. Banáni bakokí kosálisa
batu ya mosálá? Who can help the employees?
5. Banáni bakokí kosála na letá? Who can work for the government?

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Ebongákí názila mbúla mísátu
libosó ya kokendé na Mpútú. I had to wait three years
before going to Europe.
2. Ebongí názila mbúla mísátu
libosó ya kokendé na Mpútú. I have to wait three years
before going to Europe.
3. Ebongí názila tíi mokoló ya
mosálá mokó mpó na kosómba
bilambá wáná. I'll have to wait until Monday
to buy those clothes.
4. Ebongí názila tíi mokoló
ya mosálá minei mpó na
kosómba bilambá wáná. I'll have to wait until
Thursday to buy those
clothes.

5. Sókí oyákí tẹ, mbe nazílákí If you hadn't come, I would
 tíí mọkọlọ ya mosálá míneí have had wait until Thursday
 mpó na kosómbe bílamba wáná. to buy the clothes.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Bandá akendéki nainu akoméli Since he left, he hasn't
 bisú mokandá tẹ. written us a letter.
2. Bandá mbúla eleki nainu He hasn't written us a letter
 akoméli bisú mokandá tẹ. since last year.
3. Útá mbúla eleki nainu akoméli He hasn't written us a letter
 bisú mokandá tẹ. since last year.
4. Útá mbúla eleki nainu nabéti I haven't played soccer again
 lísúsu ndembó tẹ. since last year.
5. Tíí na mbúla ekoyáa nakobéta I won't play soccer again
 lísúsu ndembó tẹ. until next year.
6. Tíí na mbúla ekoyáa election There won't be another election
 mosúsu ekozala tẹ. until next year.
7. Tíí nsima ya mbúla mísátu, There won't be another election
 election mosúsu ekozala tẹ. for three years.
8. Tíí nsima ya mbúla mísátu You will live here for three
 bokolála na esíká óyo. years.
9. Tíí na ebandeli ya mbúla You will live here until the
 ekoyáa, bokolála na beginning of next year.
 esíká óyo.
10. Tíí na nsúka ya mbúla ekoyáa, You will live here until the
 bokolála na esíká óyo. end of next year.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Bána baákosakana na káti
ya ndáko mpó na mbúla. | The children will play inside
because of the rain. |
| 2. Bána baákosakana na libánda
<u>mpó likoló ezalí malámu.</u> | The children will play outside
because the weather is nice. |
| 3. <u>Bána batíndámí na molakísi</u>
<u>básakana</u> na libándá mpó
na likoló ezalí malámu. | The children were sent out to
play by the teacher because
the weather is nice. |
| 4. Bána batíndámí na molakísi
<u>bámóno litálísi.</u> | The children were sent to see
the exposition by the teacher. |
| 5. Bána batíndámí <u>bámóno</u>
<u>bitálísi na molakísi.</u> | The children were sent with the
teacher to see the exposition. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 8

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Madé ^s u malámbámí na bói. | These beans were prepared by
the houseboy. |
| 2. <u>Toókoyókama</u> na bói. | We will be (over) heard by the
houseboy. |
| 3. <u>Toókoyókana</u> na bói. | We are on friendly terms with
the houseboy. |
| 4. Toókoyókana <u>na batu míngí.</u> | We have a lot of friends. |
| 5. <u>Président ayébámí</u> na batu
míngí. | The President is known by many
people. |

14.3 Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object

Liyébísi etíndámí na molakísi.

The above sentence would usually be understood to mean, 'The notice was sent by the teacher', however, it could mean, 'The notice was sent to the teacher'. To specify only 'to', /mpó na/

is used, e.g., /llyébisa etíndámí mpó na molakısı/, 'The notice was sent to the teacher.'

14.4 Lovanium University

Lovanium, the national university of the Congo, is beautifully laid out on a plateau about eight miles from downtown Leopoldville.

14.5 Leopoldville II

Leopoldville is divided into 'communes' each with a 'bourgmestre'. Though the communes are part of a larger municipal organization, they do have a great deal of autonomy.

Unit 15

Basic Sentences

-A-

mokóló, ba-

grown person, adult

1. Okosála níni, sókó okómí
mokóló?

What are you going to do when
you are grown?

-B-

'ministre'

minister (cabinet post)

2. Na makanisi na ngái, nalingaka
nákóma ministre.

In my opinion, I'd like to be
a cabinet minister.

-A-

sodá, ba-

soldier

3. Kási libosó okosála
mosálá ya sodá?

But first, aren't you going to
do military service?

-B-

4. Tè tata, mosálá wána
nalingí yangó tè.

No, Sir, I don't want that job.

-pusa

to surpass, exceed, be
very, be too much

-nyókóló

to mistreat, torture,
annoy, oppress

5. Epusí mōnyókólí míngí.

That's much too wearisome.

-A-

6. Zilá, náyébisa yó ndéngé
ya mpási tomónáká.

Just a minute, I'd like to tell
you how we used to suffer.

-B-

7. Ozáláká sodá? You used to be a soldier?

-A-

8. Áa, mwána na ngái, koloba tẹ, mosálá ya sodá ekómí mosálá ya mbóngo. Oh, my child, don't mention that, military service has become a well-paying occupation.

9. Ezaláká bísú, makambo nyónsọ mpási. In our time, everything was difficult.

-B-

10. Obandáká sodá na mbúla bóńí? At what age did you start military service?

-A-

11. Náyéba wápi. Ntángu wáná makambo ya kokomisa nkómbó ya bána na búuku ezaláká tẹ. I have no idea. In that time the names (births) of children were not recorded.

-B-

12. Bóongó bozaláká kosála ndéngé níńí? Well then, how did it use to be done?

-A-

-úmela

to remain, stay on,
stay away

13. Tíká násílisa elambá ya batu eúmélí míngí. Go away and let me finish this garment.

-B-

14. Tíkálá malámu, nakeí na ngái. Goodby, I'm going home.

-A-

15. Këndé malámu, óyáka Goodby, come to see me again
kotála ngái ntángu some time.
mosúsu.

USEFUL PHRASES

Azalı kobolosé sokoto.	He's brushing the uniform.
Azalı kotiya silási na sapáto.	He's polishing his shoes.
Azalı kongengisa lifúngú.	He's shining the buttons.
Azalı kotonga butó.	He's sewing on a button.
Matítı ya bolósi masılı.	The brush is worn out.
Abunáká na etumba.	He fought in the war.
Babomáká yé na etumba.	He was killed in the war.
Azalı mobangé.	He's an old man.
Azalı mokúsé.	He's short.
Azalı mabé,	He's ugly.
Ezalı motúya malámu.	It's cheap.
Ezalı ntálu makási.	It's expensive.
-bolosé (brosser)	to brush
bolósi (brosse)	brush
sokoto	uniform, military jacket/ clothing
silási (cirage)	polish, shoepolish
-ngenge	to shine, blaze
-tonga	to bind, tie, join, twist, braid, plait, weave, sew, expand, enlarge
butó (bouton)	button

litítí, ma-	blade of grass, sheet of paper, hair, fur, down, bristle
-buna, -bunda	to fight, wage war, wrestle, struggle
etumba, bí-	war, fight, battle, conflict
-boma	to kill, murder, hunt, catch, damage badly, destroy, ex- tinguish, erase, wipe (off), do away with
mobangé, ba-	old person
mokúsé, mí-	short, small
motúya, mí-	price, value, number

NOTES

15.1 Intermediate Past

Náyébisa yó ndéngé ya mpási tomónáká.

The intermediate past is marked by the /-ák-/ extension and a high-tone imperfective suffix /-á/, e.g., /tomónáká/, 'we saw', 'we used to see'. In general, the intermediate past refers to something that happened more than a month ago but not more than about thirty years ago. However, as with the other tenses, the time referent is not exact and refers to something that took place between recently and a long time ago. It very often translates 'used to' in English and into the imperfect in French.

15.2 Distant Past

The distant past is marked by a high tone imperfective suffix /-á/ and refers to something that took place (usually) more than a generation ago, i.e., a long time ago, e.g., /akúfá/, 'he died (a long time ago)'.

15.3 Comparison of Intensity

Epusí monyókoli míngí.

Intensity or excess degree of something is expressed by /-pusa/, 'to surpass', 'be very', 'be too much', e.g., /Epusí monyókoli míngí/, 'It's much too wearisome', literally, 'It exceeds weariness much'. See also Note 9.1.

15.4 Comparison of Degree

Alekí mwási na monéne.

Comparison of degree is expressed by /-leka/, 'to pass by', 'exceed', /Alekí mwási na monéne/, 'He's bigger than his wife', literally 'He exceeds his wife in bigness'.

The 'superlative' is shown by /-leka/ plus /nyónsɔ/, 'all', 'every', /Alekí mibáli nyónsɔ na molái/, 'He's the tallest of the men', literally, 'He exceeds all the men in length'.

15.5 Inversion of Subject and Verb

Ezaláká bisú, makambo nyónsɔ mpási.

One way of forming temporal subordinate clauses is to reverse the order of the subject and verb. In this type of construction, the verb prefix is /e-/. In the sentence from the dialogue, /ezaláká bisú/ means 'when we were', 'during the time we were', 'in our time'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Bambúla elekí míngí mokóló
óyo azaláká sodá. | This man was a soldier many
years ago. |
| 2. Bambúla elekí míngí <u>nazaláká</u>
<u>na ndáko óyo.</u> | Many years ago I lived in
that house. |
| 3. <u>Ntángu nazaláká mwána</u>
nazaláká na ndáko óyo. | When I was a child, I lived
in that house. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. Ntángu nazaláká mwána,
<u>banyama míngi bazaláká áwa.</u> | When I was a child, there
were many animals here. |
| 5. <u>Ntángu tokendáká na mbóka,</u>
banyama míngi bazaláká áwa. | When we moved from the village,
there were many animals here. |
| 6. Ntángu tokendáká na mbóka,
<u>tatá atikaláká na mosálá</u>
<u>ya sodá.</u> | When we left the village, my
father was a soldier. |
| 7. <u>Ntángu mamá akúfáká,</u> tatá
atikaláká na mosálá ya sodá. | When mother died, father was
still a soldier. |
| 8. Ntángu mamá akúfáká, <u>nazaláká</u>
<u>naino mwána moké.</u> | When mother died, I was still
a small child. |
| 9. <u>Tatá asómbáká ndáko na bisú</u>
<u>ntángu nazaláká naino mwána</u>
moké. | Father bought our house when
I was still a small child. |
| 10. Tatá asómbáká ndáko na bisú
ntángu <u>ayáká na Leó.</u> | Father bought this house when
he came to Leopoldville. |

Pattern Drill 1

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Alekí mwási na monéñe. | He is bigger than his wife. |
| 2. Alekí mwási na <u>molaí.</u> | He is taller than his wife. |
| 3. Alekí mwási na <u>bambúla.</u> | He is (a little) older than
his wife. |
| 4. Alekí mwási na <u>mokúsé.</u> | He is shorter than his wife. |
| 5. Alekí mwási na <u>mobangé.</u> | He is (much) older than his
wife. |

Pattern Drill 2

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Mótuka óyo elekí wána
kitókọ. | This car is prettier than
that one. |
|-------------------------------------|--|

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na <u>makási</u> . | This car is better-built than that one. |
| 3. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na <u>ntálo</u> . | This car is more expensive than that one. |
| 4. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na <u>kotámbole</u> . | This car runs faster than that one. |
| 5. Mótuka óyo eleki wána na <u>molái</u> . | This car is longer than that one. |

Pattern Drill 3

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Mótuka óyo epusí kitóko. | This car is very beautiful. |
| 2. Mótuka óyo epusí <u>makási</u> . | This car is very well-built. |
| 3. Mótuka óyo epusí <u>ntálo</u> . | This car is too expensive. |
| 4. Mótuka óyo epusí <u>kotámbole</u> . | This car is very fast. |
| 5. Mótuka óyo epusí <u>molái</u> . | This car is too long. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ntángu nazaláká na Kinsásá, nazaláká kofánda epái na yé. | When I lived in Leopoldville. I stayed at his house. |
| 2. <u>Ntángu nazaláká moyékoli</u> , nazaláká kofánda epái na yé. | When I was a student, I used to live at his house. |
| 3. Ntángu nazaláká moyékoli, <u>nazaláká kobima míngi</u> . | When I was a student, I used to go out a lot. |
| 4. <u>Libosó tatá ákúfa</u> , nazaláká kobima míngi. | Before my father died, I used to go out a lot. |
| 5. Libosó tatá ákúfa, <u>apésáká ngái mótuka</u> . | Before my father died, he gave me a car. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 6. <u>Ntángu nasílísáká kelási,</u>
apesáká ngái mótuca. | After I finished school, he
gave me a car. |
| 7. Ntángu nasílísáká kelási,
<u>nalukáká mosála.</u> | After I finished school, I
looked for a job. |
| 8. <u>Ntángu nazóngáká na Amérique,</u>
nalukáká mosála. | After I returned from America,
I looked for a job. |
| 9. Ntángu nazóngáká na Amérique,
<u>nazaláká kokomela baníngá</u>
<u>ntángu mosúsu.</u> | After I returned from America,
I used to write to my friends
occasionally. |
| 10. <u>Ntángu nazaláká na ntángu,</u>
nazaláká kokomela baníngá
ntángu mosúsu. | When I had time, I used to
write to my friends occa-
sionally. |

Pattern Drill 4

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya
yó na mbúla. | My son is older than yours. |
| 2. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya
yó na <u>mayéle.</u> | My daughter is smarter than
yours. |
| 3. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya
yó na <u>kitóko.</u> | My daughter is prettier than
yours. |
| 4. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya
yó na <u>molaí.</u> | My son is taller than yours. |
| 5. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya
yó na <u>makási.</u> | My son is stronger than yours. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nazaláká kokendé kolía epái
na bangó ntángu mamá
akótáká lopítalo. | I went to eat at their house
when mother went to the
hospital. |
| 2. Nazaláká <u>nainu mwána ntángu</u>
<u>etumba ekweyaká na mboka.</u> | I was still a child when the war
took place in our country. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. <u>Azaláká káka na mbúla zómi</u>
ntángu etumba ekwéyáká
na mbóka. | He was only ten years old when
the war took place in our
country. |
| 4. <u>Azaláká káka na mbúla zómi</u>
ntángu tata na yé akúfáká. | He was only ten years old when
his father died. |
| 5. <u>Amekáká kozwá mosálá</u> ntángu
tata na yé akúfáká. | He tried to get a job when his
father died. |
| 6. <u>Amekáká kozwá mosálá nsima</u>
ya mbótámá na mwána. | He tried to get a job after
the birth of his son. |
| 7. <u>Ayáká na Kinsásá</u> nsima ya
mbótámá na mwána. | He came to Leopoldville after
the birth of his son. |
| 8. <u>Ayáká na Kinsásá ntángu</u>
azaláká kosála na masúwa. | He came to Leopoldville while
he was working on a riverboat. |
| 9. <u>Nayébáká yé</u> ntángu azaláká
kosála na masúwa. | I knew him while he was working
on a riverboat. |
| 10. <u>Nayébáká yé libosó álongwa</u>
na Kinsanganí. | I knew him before he left
Stanleyville. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Basodá bazíngí mbóka. | The soldiers surrounded the
village. |
| 2. Basodá <u>baákotiya silási</u>
ya sapáto. | The soldiers are polishing
their shoes. |
| 3. <u>Momemí akendéki koluka</u>
silási ya sapáto. | The porter has gone to get
some shoepolish. |
| 4. <u>Momemí akendéki koluka</u>
butó ya sokoto. | The porter has gone to get some
buttons for his uniform. |
| 5. <u>Sodá óyo angangísáki</u> butó
ya sokoto. | This soldier shined his uniform
buttons. |

6. Sodá óyo alekí wáná na moláí. This soldier is taller than that one.
7. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na moláí. This car is longer than that one.
8. Mótuka óyo epusí ntálo. This car is too expensive.
9. Bolósi wáná epusí ntálo. That brush is too expensive.
10. Bolósi wáná ekómí ya kála. That brush is old.

Unit 16

Basic Sentence

-A-

1. Libóké ya batu wáná ezalí
kosá alá ní ní?

What is that group of men
doing?

-B-

-pasola

to tear, split, cleave,
saw, tear up, break up,
cut through

nzelá, nzílá

road, way, path, means,
permission

2. Bazalí kopasola nzelá.

They are building a road through.

-A-

3. Nzelá yangó ekëndé tíí
wápí?

How far is the road supposed
to go?

-B-

4. Nakanísí eékokóma tíí na
Matádí.

I believe it's going as far
as Matadí.

-A-

5. Bakosála mikóló bóní na
mayéle na yó.

How long will it take to build
in your estimation?

-B-

ngúyá, n-

strength, power, ability,
quality

6. Sòkò bazalí na ngúyá, bakokí
kosála sánzá mísátu toó
mínei. If they keep at it, they can
do it in three or four
months.
- A-
7. Áwa tíi na Matadí bakílo-
metres bóní? How many kilometers is it
from here to Matadí?
- B-
8. Na avió toó na mótuka? By plane or by car?
- A-
9. Na mótuka. By car.
- B-
10. Nakanísí nkámá mínei
kilometres. I believe it's four hundred
kilometers.
- A-
11. Bóongó na avió? And by plane?
- B-
12. Nkámá mísátu na ntúkú
motóbá na mítánu. Three hundred sixty-five
kilometers.
- A-
13. Nzelá ya ndéngé níni
bakosála? What kind of road are they
building?
- B-
- siméti (ciment) cement
14. Libosó, bakotiya mabángá
basangísí na siméti. First, they will pour stone(s)
mixed with cement.

- túta to strike, beat, mash,
crush, bump (against)
- símba to hold, seize
- libendé, ma- rod, post, pole, tamper,
tamping stick
15. Bakotúta na libendé mpó
te esímba makási. They will beat it out (smooth)
with a tamper to make it hold
(together) tightly.
- A-
16. Bóongó na nsíma? And then?
- B-
- sopa to pour, spill overturn,
spread, unload
- mokóbo, mí- color, paint
- yínda to become dark, black,
dirty
- mwíndu, míndu, black, dark, Negro; bad
moíndo character/intention;
with dislike/aversion
17. Bakosopa mokóbo ya mwíndu
líkoló mpó te siméti na They'll spread some black
mabángá bisímba makási. colored material on top
so the cement and rocks
will bond together well.
- A-
18. Mokóbo yangó nkómbó níni? What's the name of the black-
colored material?
- B-
- falansé French
- 'goudron' tar

19. Nkómbó na yangó na
falansé goudron.

It's called 'goudron' in
French.

-A-

putulú

cinders, ashes, dust,
powder

20. Siméti níni bakotiya, ya
putulú toó ya máí-mái?

What kind of cement are they
to use, liquid or dry?

-B-

21. Óyo ya máí-mái.

Liquid.

USEFUL PHRASES

Dzeké eékotóka mabelé.

The steamshovel is digging up
the ground.

Dzeké eékotímola libúlú.

The steamshovel is digging a
hole.

Dzeké eékotóndisa mabelé na
kamió.

The steamshovel is filling
the trunk with earth.

Míbáli baákotímola libélá ya
mái na piósi na mpáu.

The men are digging a well
with picks and shovels.

Míbáli baákotímola libéla ya
kabiné na piósi na mpáu.

The men are digging a toilet
with picks and shovels.

Míbáli baákokunda tiyó ya máí.

The men are burying a water
pipe.

Mí báli baákokunda tiyó ya gaz.

The men are burying a gas pipe.

Míbáli baákopika nzeté ya
telefón.

The men are setting up a
telephone pole.

Biléi bízalí elęngí.

The food tastes good.

Biléi bízalí sukáli.

The food tastes sweet.

Biléi bızalí ngaı.	The food tastes sour.
Biléi bızalí bololo.	The food tastes bitter.
Biléi bızalí ya kopolo.	The food is rotten.
Biléi bızalí na móngwa.	The food is salted.
Biléi bızalí na móngwa míngı.	The food is too salty.
dzeké	steamshovel; earth mover, dump truck
-tóka	to draw water, dig out/up
mabelé	earth, ground, floor
-timola	to dig (up), turn over the soil
libúlú, ma-	well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
-tonda	to be(come) full, filled, fill
libélá, ma-	well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
kamió (camion)	truck
mpáu, mpáo, m-	shovel, spade
piósi, (pioche)	pick, pickaxe
kabiné (cabinet)	toilet; excrement
-kunda	to bury, plant
tıyó (tuyau)	pipe, tube, hose, gas
'gaz'	gas
nzeté, n-	tree, stick, pice of wood
elengı	pleasing to the senses, good taste/smell; beauty

sukáli	sugar, candy; sweet
ngai	sour(ness)
bololo	bitter(ness), sour(ness)
-pɔlɔ	to be(come) wet, soggy, rotten; be beaten, defeated
móngwa, mi-	salt

NOTES

16.1 Subject with two verbs.

Batu balálaka áwa bakendéki lóbi.

Many subjects which have two verbs in Lingala translate into English and French as subject plus two verbs, but very often such a Lingala construction translates as subject plus adjectival relative clause plus verb, e.g., /Batu balálaka áwa bakendéki lóbi/, 'The people who live here left yesterday', literally, 'The people they live here they left yesterday'. Note that it is the first verb in this type of sentence that translates as a relative clause.

16.2 Immediate Past of /-longwa/

Alongweí epái azaláki kofwánda libosó.

The immediate past of /-longwa/ has /-e/ before the tense marker, e.g., /alongweí/, 'he has gone away'. See Note 2.9. Rule IV.

16.3 Indefinite Condition

Sókí osóbáká mókó, mbɛlɛ babongísáká mosúsu.

Indefinite or improbable condition is expressed by the intermediate past in both clauses and a particle such as /mbɛlɛ/ at the beginning of the result clause, e.g., /Sókí osóbáká mókó

mbɛlɛ babɔngísáká mosúsu/, 'If you were to buy one (but you probably won't), then they would have the other one repaired'.

Some dialects of Lingala also express indefinite condition with the immediate past in the if-clause and an indefinite particle and the future in the result clause. Though the student may read or perhaps hear this, he should not use it because it does not usually occur in speech and is likely to be misunderstood.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nzelá óyo eékoleka na Bóma. | This road goes to (through) Boma. |
| 2. Nzelá óyo <u>eékokóma tíí na Bóma.</u> | This road goes to (as far as) Boma. |
| 3. <u>Avíó</u> eékokóma tíí na Boma. | The airplane is going as far as Boma. |
| 4. Avíó <u>ekómí.</u> | The airplane has (just) arrived. |
| 5. <u>Bayékoli ya síka</u> bakómí. | The new students have (just) arrived. |
| 6. Bayékoli ya síka <u>bazalí bánsɔ baíndu.</u> | The new students are all Africans/Negroes. |
| 7. <u>Batu balálaka áwa</u> bazalí bánsɔ baíndu. | The people who live here are all Negroes/Africans. |
| 8. Batu balálaka áwa <u>bakendéki lóbí.</u> | The people who live here left yesterday. |
| 9. <u>Basáli bapasóláki nzilá</u> bakendéki lóbí. | The workers who built the road left yesterday. |
| 10. Basáli bapasóláki nzilá <u>bakozónga lóbí.</u> | The workers who built the road will return tomorrow. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | | |
|-----|---|--|
| 1. | Mpó na níní libóké ya bána
óyo eékozila lisúsu? | Why is that group of children
still waiting? |
| 2. | Libóké ya bána óyo <u>eékozila</u>
<u>molakısı</u> . | The group of children is
waiting for the teacher. |
| 3. | <u>Bána bakelási bakosukola</u>
<u>ndáko ya molakısı</u> . | The students will clean up
the teacher's house. |
| 4. | Bána bakelási bakosukola
<u>bızalelı</u> . | The students will wash off
the chairs. |
| 5. | <u>Babóı baákotiya mokóbo na</u>
<u>bızalelı</u> . | The houseboys are painting
the chairs. |
| 6. | Babóı <u>baákosopa mabángá</u>
<u>na nzelá</u> . | The boys are spreading rock
on the walkway. |
| 7. | <u>Bangó bánsó baákosopa</u>
<u>mabángá na nzelá</u> . | They are all spreading stone
on the roadway. |
| 8. | Bangó bánsó <u>baákokende na</u>
<u>Coq na avió</u> . | They are all going to Coquil-
hatville by plane. |
| 9. | <u>Mwána na ngái aákokende</u>
<u>na Coq na avió</u> . | My son is going to Coquilhat-
ville by plane. |
| 10. | Mwána na ngái azalı <u>na</u>
<u>ngúyá míngı</u> . | My son is very strong. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | Alongweı epái azaláki
kofwánda libosó. | He (has) moved. He (has)
changed his address. |
|----|---|--|

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. Alongweí <u>na Lovaniúm</u>
<u>akómí na Kinsásá.</u> | He has moved from Lovanium
into the old section of
Leopoldville. |
| 3. Alongweí <u>na mosálá.</u> | He quit his job. |
| 4. Alongweí <u>na etéyelo.</u> | He has quit school. |
| 5. Alongweí <u>na mosálá ya sodá.</u> | He has resigned from the army. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Atíkí <u>komeḷa likáyá.</u> | He quit smoking. |
| 2. Atíkí <u>mótuka na yé.</u> | He parked his car. |
| 3. <u>Abóyí</u> <u>mótuka na yé.</u> | He abandoned his car. |
| 4. Abóyí <u>mwási.</u> | He has left his wife for good. |
| 5. <u>Atíkí</u> <u>mwási.</u> | He has left his wife at home. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Dzeké <u>eékotiya mabelé na</u>
<u>kamió.</u> | The steamshovel is loading dirt
into the truck. |
| 2. <u>Basáli baákosopa</u> <u>mabelé</u>
<u>na kamió.</u> | The workmen are unloading dirt
from the truck. |
| 3. Basáli <u>baákobimisa bilóko</u>
<u>na masíni.</u> | The workmen are unloading the
railroad car. |
| 4. Basáli <u>baákosopa mabángá</u>
<u>na balabálá.</u> | The workmen are spreading rock
on the road. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. <u>Kamió</u> eékosopa mabángá
na balabálá. | The truck is dumping rock on
the road. |
| 6. Kamió <u>ezalí komema nzeté</u>
<u>ya telefón.</u> | The truck is carrying telephone
poles. |
| 7. <u>Basáli baákopika mabendé</u>
<u>ya telefón.</u> | The workmen are setting up
telephone poles. |
| 8. <u>Mibáli batelémisi</u> mabendé
<u>ya telefón.</u> | The men set up the telephone
poles. |
| 9. Mibáli batelémisi <u>madésu</u>
<u>na nzeté.</u> | The men set up sticks for the
beans. |
| 10. Mibáli <u>batóndisáki libúlú</u>
<u>na mabelé.</u> | The men filled the hole with
dirt. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Akeí nsima ya ndáko. | He went to the toilet. |
| 2. Akeí <u>na Bóma na mótuka.</u> | He went to Boma by car. |
| 3. Akeí na Bóma na mótuka
<u>na nzilá ya sika.</u> | He went to Boma by car by the
new route. |
| 4. Akeí na Bóma <u>na nzilá ya</u>
<u>masini.</u> | He went to Boma by train. |
| 5. Akeí <u>na Brazza na masúwa</u>
<u>ya nsúka.</u> | He went to Brazzaville on the
last boat. |

Pattern Drill 1

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Otobísi ekendé tíi wápi? | How far is the bus supposed
to go? |
| 2. Otobísi <u>ekóma</u> tíi wápi? | How far is the bus supposed
to go? |

3. Otobísí ekóma tíí na
Lovaniúm. The bus is supposed to go far
as Lovanium.
4. Otobísí eúti na Lovaniúm The bus came from Lovanium.
5. Otobísí eútaka na Lovaniúm. The bus comes from Lovanium.

Pattern Drill 2

1. Sókó oyáká leló, mbéle
napésáká yó nkámá mókó. If you were to come today, I'd
give you a thousand francs.
2. Sókí osómbáká mókó, mbéle
napésáká yó nkámá mókó. If you were to buy one, I'd give
you a thousand francs.
3. Sókí osómbáká mókó, mbéle
babongísáká mosúsu. If you were to buy one, they
would have the other one
repaired.
4. Sókí obongísáká ndáko óyo,
mbéle babongísáká mosúsu. If you were to have this house
repaired, they would have the
other one repaired.
5. Sókí obongísáká ndáko óyo,
mbéle okokáká kotékísa
yangó. If you were to repair this house,
you would be able to sell at
a profit.
6. Sókó oziláká sánzá mókó,
mbéle okokáká kotékísa
yangó. If you were to wait a month, you
would be able to sell it at
a profit.
7. Sókó oziláká sánzá mókó,
mbéle okendéké na Leó. If you waited a month, you would
be able to go to Leopoldville.
8. Sókí ozaláká na nkótó mókó,
mbéle okendéké na Leó. If you had a thousand francs,
you could go to Leopoldville.
9. Sókí ozaláká na nkótó mókó,
mbéle okokáká kosómba
bílambá. If you had a thousand francs,
you could buy some clothes.
10. Sókó okendé na Kinsásá,
mbélé okokáká kosómba
bílambá. If you went to Leopoldville,
you could buy some clothes.

Unit 17

Basic Sentences

-A-

sɔfɛ́lɛ, ba-
(chauffeur)

driver, chauffeur

1. Èe! Sɔfɛ́lɛ, kangá mótuka
na yó kúná.

Hey! Driver, stop your car
over there.

-B-

2. Elókò níní nasá lí kó
gendarme? Nabomí moto?

Well, officer, what did I do?
Did I kill somebody?

-A-

mwínda
motáné
-pela

light, lamp
bright red/yellow/orange
to be on fire, burn, be lit

3. Ozalí komóna mwínda tẹ?

Didn't you see the red light?

4. Óyo ya motáné epelí mpó
na níní?

What (do you think) red lights
are for?

5. Oyé bí kotelẹmẹ mpó nakozíla
moké tẹ?

Don't you know to wait?

-B-

6. Pardon, namónákí mwínda
malámu tẹ.

I'm sorry. I didn't see the
light very well.

-A-

7. Omóní malámu tẹ?

You didn't see it very well?

'permis de conduire'

driver's license

8. Lakísá ngái permis de
conduire na yó.

Show me your driver's license.

-B-

9. Ezalí tɛ́, mpó nabandí
koyékola kotámbwisa
mótuka káka sika.

I don't have any because I've
only just started to learn
to drive.

-A-

mpáku, mpáko, m-

tax, corvée labor

10. Bóongó búuku na yó ya mpáku?

And your identification book?

11. Ozalí mpé na yangó tɛ́?

Don't you have it either?

-B-

má

Here! Take it!

-fúta

to pay; atone, make
up for

12. Má, yangó óyo. Kási nainu
nafúti mpáku ya mbúla
óyo tɛ́.

Here, take it. But I haven't
paid my tax this year yet.

-A-

13. Landá ngái na Commune ya
Kalámu.

Follow me to the Kalamu Commune.

-B-

komiséle (commissaire)

commissioner, policeman

14. Tɛ́, Komiséle, mótuka ezalí
ya ngái tɛ́.

No, Officer, the car doesn't
belong to me.

lománde (n-) (amende)

fine, penalty

15. Lománde ya bóni olingí
náfúta?

How much of a fine do you want
me to pay?

-A-

pósi (poche)

pocket, pouch, sack

16. Ozalí na nkóto mókó sika
óyo na pósi na yó?

Do you have a thousand francs
in your pocket right now?

-B-

avási (avance)

advance, part payment,
deposit

17. Tè, nápésa avási, bóongó
nákendè koluka ndámbo
mosúsu na mbóka.

No, let me give a deposit and
then let me go home to get
the rest.

-A-

bolókò, ma-
makèlèlè

jail, prison
quarrel, argument, sound
of voices, noise

18. Mwána, sòkò olíngí bolókò
tè, tìká makèlèlè mpé
landá ngái. Esílí!

Boy, if you don't want to go to
jail, shut up and follow me.
And that's final!

-B-

19. Nayókí yó, Komísèlè.

I understand you, Officer.

USEFUL PHRASES

Obúngí mibéko ya nzilá.

You've broken the traffic laws.

Obúngí matéya.

You don't know your lesson.

Obúngí nzilá ya mbóka.

You've lost your way home.

Obúngí nzilá ya kozóna na Leó.

You've lost the road to Leopold-
ville.

Polísi abótólí paláki ya mótuka
na yé.

The police confiscated his auto
plates.

Polísi abótólí mótuka na yé
mpó azwí líkámá na mótuka.

The police confiscated his car
because he had an accident.

Mopaya akangí mótuka mpembéni
na balabálá.

The stranger parked his car on
the side of the street.

Mopaya akangí mótuka na nsúka na balabálá.	The stranger parked his car at the corner of the street.
Mopaya akotísí mótuka na kátí ya lopángo.	The stranger parked his car in the yard/driveway.
Komiséle apésí yé kovokasió mpó atámbwísí mótuka mbángu makási.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he was speeding
Komiséle apésí yé kovokasió mpó akangísí mótuka esíká ya mabé.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he was parked illegally.
Komiséle apésí yé kovokasió mpó atútí motu ya nkínga.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he ran into a man on a bicycle.
-búnga	to forget; make a mistake, be wrong; lose, get lost, lose one's way; die
mobéko, m1-	law, regulation, obligation, duty
litéya, ma-	lesson
polísi (police)	policeman, police
-bótɔlɔ	to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound, pillage
paláki (plaque)	plate, plaque, auto license plate
likámá, ma-	accident, danger; punishment
mopaya, ba-	stranger, guest, visitor, host

mpembéni, m-	side, edge; beside, along, next to, around, near
lopángo, m-	enclosure; fence; plot of land, place of residence
kovokasió (convocation)	notice, summons, traffic ticket
nkinga, n-	bicycle

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Atélemísí mótuka mpembéni
na ndáko. | He parked the car beside the
house. |
| 2. Akangísí mótuka mpembéni
na ndáko. | He stopped the car beside the
house. |
| 3. Akangísí mótuka libosó ya
mwinda motané. | He stopped the car at the red
light. |
| 4. Mítuka mínsò mikangámí
libosó ya mwinda motané. | All the cars are stopped at
the red light. |
| 5. Mítuka mínsò mikangámí mpó
mwinda motané epelí. | All the cars are stopped
because the light is red. |
| 6. Mótuka monéne etélemí mpó
mwinda motané epelí. | The big truck stopped because
the light is red. |
| 7. Mótuka monéne etélemí
nsima ya magazíni. | The big truck stopped behind
the store. |
| 8. Nzela ezalí nsima ya
magazíni. | There is a street behind the
store. |
| 9. Nzela ezalí na batu míngí. | There are many people on the
street. |

10. Mbóka na bísú ezalí na batu míngi. There are many people in our village.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Baníngá na ngái baákotámbole mbángu. My friends are in a hurry.
2. Baníngá na ngái bafútéli ngái lománde. My friends paid the fine for me.
3. Mokonzi afútéli ngái lománde. The chief paid the fine for me.
4. Mokonzi amóni mwinda motané tē. The chief didn't see the red light.
5. Basáli bamóni mwinda motané tē. The workers didn't see the red light.
6. Basáli bakei koluka mbóngó ya sánzá. The workers have gone to get their (monthly) pay.
7. Mokakisi akei koluka mbóngó ya sánzá. The teacher has gone to get his salary.
8. Molakisi aakopelisa mabáyá. The teacher is burning the wood.
9. Bána aakopelisa mabáyá. The boys are burning wood.
10. Bána baakoyékola kotámbwisa mótuka. The boys are learning to drive.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Bolangiti ekufi. The blanket is worn out.
2. Bolangiti epasuki. The blanket is torn up/worn out.
3. Sapato epasuki. The shoes are torn up/worn out.
4. Sapato ekomi ya kala. The shoes are old.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5. <u>Pataló</u> ekómi ya kála. | The pants are old. |
| 6. Pataló <u>ezalí motúya malámu.</u> | The pants are inexpensive. |
| 7. <u>Kazáka</u> ezalí motúya malámu. | The jacket is cheap. |
| 8. Kazáka <u>eúti na Bruxelles.</u> | The coat is from Brussels. |
| 9. <u>Libóké</u> eúti na Bruxelles. | The package came from Brussels. |
| 10. Libóké <u>etíndamáki na avió.</u> | The package was sent by air. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Kilió nini ozalí na yangó. | What pencil do you have? |
| 2. Kilió <u>ya nani</u> ozalí na yangó? | Whose pencil do you have? |
| 3. Kilió <u>ya ndéngé nini</u> ozalí
na yangó? | What kind of pencil do you
have? |
| 4. <u>Mótuka</u> ya ndéngé nini ozalí
na yangó? | What kind of car do you have? |
| 5. <u>Mótuka nini</u> ozalí na yangó? | What make of car do you have? |

Pattern Drill 1

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nabandí koyékola kotámbwisa
mótuka káka sika óyo. | I've only just started to learn
to drive. |
| 2. Nabandí <u>kosukola ndáko</u> káka
sika óyo. | I've only just started to clean
up the house. |
| 3. Nabandí <u>kopakola mokóbo na</u>
<u>mésa.</u> | I've only just started to paint
the table. |
| 4. Nabandí <u>kobongisa masíni ya</u>
<u>mikandá</u> káka sika óyo. | I've only just started repairing
the typewriter. |
| 5. Nabandí <u>kokitisa bilóko na</u>
<u>kamió</u> káka sika óyo. | I've only just started unloading
the truck. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Komisèle abóyí kozwá mbóngó. | The policeman refused to accept the money. |
| 2. Komisèle <u>abótóli yé búuku ya mpáku.</u> | The policeman took away his ID card. |
| 3. <u>Bourgestre ya Commune ya Kalámu</u> abótóli yé búuku ya mpáku. | The mayor of Kalamu Commune confiscated his ID card. |
| 4. Bourgestre ya Commune ya Kalámu <u>abóyí makelélé.</u> | The mayor of Kalamu Commune doesn't like noise. |
| 5. <u>Mobangé oyo</u> abóyí makelélé. | The old man doesn't like noise. |
| 6. Mobangé oyo <u>afwándí áwa tíí na ntóngó.</u> | The old man has been sitting here since this morning. |
| 7. <u>Mopaya wáná</u> afwándí áwa tíí na ntóngó. | That stranger has been sitting here since this morning. |
| 8. Mopaya wáná <u>abúngí nzelé ya mbóka na yé.</u> | That stranger can't remember the way back to his village. |
| 9. <u>Motu ya mabayá</u> abúngí nzelé ya mbóka na yé. | The carpenter can't remember the way back to his village. |
| 10. Motu ya mabayá <u>abótóli ebéteḽi na mwána.</u> | The carpenter took the hammer away from the child. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Atútání na nzeté. | He walked into a tree. |
| 2. <u>Mótuka etúti</u> nzeté. | The car crashed into a tree. |
| 3. Mótuka etúti <u>motu ya nkínga.</u> | The car hit a man on a bicycle. |
| 4. <u>Polísi akangí</u> motu ya nkínga. | The police arrested a man on a bicycle. |

-
- | | |
|--|--|
| 5. Polísi akangí <u>sofele</u> alekí
<u>mwinda motané.</u> | The police arrested the driver
who ran the red light. |
| 6. <u>Tozali koluka</u> <u>sofele</u> alekí
<u>mwinda motané.</u> | We are looking for the driver
who ran the red light. |
| 7. Tozali koluka <u>mobali</u> akangí
<u>lopango.</u> | We are looking for the man who
fenced the plot of ground. |
| 8. <u>Mopaya ayebi</u> <u>mobali</u> akangí
<u>lopango.</u> | The visitor knows the man who
is getting engaged. |
| 9. Mopaya ayebi <u>kopelisa</u>
<u>mwinda.</u> | The stranger knows how to light
the lamp. |
| 10. <u>Natuni mwasi</u> <u>apelisela</u>
<u>ngai</u> mwinda. | I asked the woman to light the
lamp for me. |

Unit 18

Basic Sentences

-A-

-tóngá

to build, construct

1. Nayókí te otóngísí ndáko
ya sika.

I've heard that you've had a
new house built.

-B-

sólóló

true, real, right; truth

2. Ee, ezalí ya sólóló.

Yes, that's true.

-A-

bríkí (brique)

brick

-tumba

to burn, set fire, to
roast over/in a fire

3. Ezalí ya bríkí ya kotumba
toó ya simétí?

Is it made out of fired bricks
or cement?

-B-

4. Ezalí ya bríkí ya
kotumbama.

It's made of fired bricks.

-A-

eténí, bɛ-

piece, part, share; room

5. Bozalí na biténí bóní
ndáko?

How many rooms do you have?

-B-

6. Biténí mítánu.

Five rooms.

-A-

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <p>-pɔ̃nɔ̃
láŋɔ̃</p> | <p>to choose, select, elect
paint, color</p> |
| 7. Nánɔ̃ aɔ̃nɔ̃ láŋɔ̃ ya ndáko? | Who chose the paint for your house? |

-B-

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>8. Mamá moto aɔ̃nákí yangó.
lísó, lísu, ^omíso,
^omísu</p> | <p>It was mother who chose it.
eye, (in pl.) with eyes
open, with good vision/
taste, unafraid</p> |
| 9. Oyébí tɛ̃ te básí bazalí na
mísu malámu? | Don't you know that women have excellent taste? |

-A-

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>lokóla, (n-)</p> | <p>kind, sort; also, too;
as, like, such as,
similar, same sort</p> |
| 10. Olóngí, ezalí ya sóɔ̃lɔ̃. | You're right, it's true. |
| 11. Na kátɔ̃ mpé ezalí lokóla
na libándá? | Is the interior also the same color as the outside? |

-B-

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>12. Ntína níni?</p> | <p>For what reason/why should it be?</p> |
| <p>13. Na ndáko ya kolía, ezalí
mái ya mɔ̃ndú.
sokolá (chocolat)</p> | <p>In the dining room, it's green.
brown, dark red</p> |
| 14. Na ndáko ya kosolola, sokolá. | In the living room, brown. |
| 15. Na bandáko mosúsu, mwíndu,
toó mpémbé, toó mái ya
malála. | In the other rooms, gray,
white, or orange. |

-A-

16. Bozali bóni na libótá? How many are there in your family?
17. Nani mwána ya libosó, mwási toó mobáli? Who is the oldest child, a girl or a boy?

-B-

17. Tozali motóbá, mwána mwási moto azali libosó. There are six of us (children). The oldest is a girl.

-A-

18. Binú nyónsɔ bokendekɛ kelási, toó bána misúsu batíkala mpó na kopésa mamá mabókɔ? Do you all go to school or do some of the children stay home to give your mother a hand?

-B-

19. Misátu ya miké nainu bakómisi bangó na kelási tɛ. The three smallest haven't started to school yet.

-B-

-kúta

to meet, find, come upon

20. Malámu, nakei nainu kolía, tokokútana nsima. Good, I'm going to eat now, we'll see each other later.
21. Kɛndé malámu. Goodby.

USEFUL PHRASES

Eténi ya kobómba bilambá ezali motánésɔ. The closet is (painted) yellow.

Eténi ya kobómba bilóko ezali motánésɔ. The storage room is tan.

Eténi ya kobómba biléi ezalí bulé.	The pantry is blue.
Kómbá ndáko.	Sweep the floor.
Sukóla ndáko.	Mop the floor.
Púpólá putulú likoló ya mesá na kití.	Dust off the furniture.
Kulútu na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My older brother is reading the paper.
Léki na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My younger brother is reading the paper.
Bokiló na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My father-in-law is reading the paper.
Kóko na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My grandfather is reading the paper.
Mbanda na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My co-wife is reading the paper.
Bísú na yé tokómi mbanda.	We no longer like each other. (lit.) We have become in-laws.
Akeí ndóbo.	He has gone fishing.
Akeí bokila.	He has gone hunting.
Aákokálinga makeí na kúku.	She's frying eggs in the kitchen.
Aákotókisa makeí na kúku.	She's boiling eggs in the kitchen.
Aákotumba nyama.	She's roasting meat over the fire.
-bómba	to hide, keep, store, preserve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)
motánésó	light yellow/tan/beige
bulé (bleu)	blue
-kómbó, -kómba	to sweep, clean house, empty

-pupa	to blow, fan, winnow, make clean by blowing/shaking
kulútu, ba-	older brother/sister
-tánga	to read, count, enumerate, add up
zulunálo (journal)	newspaper, magazine
lékí, ba-	younger brother/sister
bokiló, °bakiló	parent-in-law, brother/sister-in-law, good friend, acquaintance
kóko, ba-	grandparents, grandchild
mbanda, ba-	co-wife; brother-in-law married to wife's sister, sister-in-law married to husband's brother; people who don't like each other
ndóbo, n-	fishing, fishhook
bokíla, ma-	hunt(ing)
-kálínga, kálínga	to fry, bake, roast
likeí, ma-	egg
kúku	kitchen
-tókó	to boil, be boiling

NOTES

18.1 /-zala ya/

Ezali ya sôóló.

Ezali ya bríki ya kotúmba toó ya siméti?

/-zala ya/ means 'to consist of', 'be made out of', as in

the sentence above: 'It is true', literally 'It consists of the truth'; 'Is it made out of fired bricks or cement?'

18.2 Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject

Mamá moto aponáki yangó.

Equational sentences (See Note 6.1) whose second element begin with /moto/ or /bato/ are used to give special emphasis to the subject. In this type of sentence, /moto/ often translates, 'the one who', 'the person who', as in the sentence above, 'Mother (is) the one who chose it.' /aponáki yangó/ is an adjective relative clause (See Note 5.10) in this sentence.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Libótá ezalí na eténi
ya kolía. | The family is in the dining
room. |
| 2. Libótá ezalí na <u>eténi</u> ya
<u>kolámba bilóko</u> . | The family is in the kitchen. |
| 3. <u>Bakulútu na yó</u> ya mibáli
bazalí na eténi ya
kolámba bilóko. | Your older brothers are in
the kitchen. |
| 4. Bakulútu na yó ya mibáli
bazalí na <u>biténi</u> ya
<u>kolála</u> . | Your brothers are in their
bedroom. |
| 5. <u>Baléki na ngái</u> bazalí na
biténi ya kolála. | My younger brothers and
sisters are in their
bedrooms. |
| 6. Baléki na ngái <u>bazalí</u>
<u>kotumba bríki</u> . | My younger brothers are
firing bricks. |
| 7. <u>Batu</u> bazalí kotumba bríki. | The men are firing bricks. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 8. Batu <u>batóngáki</u> ndáko na <u>bríki</u> ya kotumba. | The men built the house of fired brick. |
| 9. <u>Ndáko etóngámáká</u> na bríki ya kotumba. | The house was built out of fired brick. |
| 10. Ndáko etóngámáká na <u>mabángá ná mabayá</u> . | The house was built out of stone and wood. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Mwána amónánáká libosó ya ndáko. | The boy was seen in front of the house. |
| 2. <u>Mótuka</u> emónánáká libosó ya ndáko. | The car was seen in front of the house. |
| 3. Mótuka <u>ebongísámáká</u> na <u>mécanicien</u> . | The truck was repaired by the mechanic. |
| 4. <u>Aviô</u> ebongísámáká na <u>mécanicien</u> . | The plane was repaired by the mechanic. |
| 5. Aviô eyókámáká na bána. | The airplane was heard by the children. |
| 6. <u>Basáleli</u> bayókámáká na bána. | The servants were heard by the children. |
| 7. Basáleli <u>batúnámáká</u> na <u>mokonzi</u> . | The servants were questioned by the chief. |
| 8. <u>Basáli</u> batúnámáká na mokonzi. | The workers were questioned by the chief. |
| 9. Basáli <u>bazalí kotúnama</u> na <u>gendarme</u> . | The workers are being questioned by the policeman. |
| 10. <u>Mwási</u> azalí kotúnama na gendarme. | The woman is being questioned by the police. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Olongí, ndáko na bangó
ezalí ya bríkí motáné. | You're right, their house is
built out of red bricks. |
| 2. Olongí <u>na líkambo olobí.</u> | You're correct in what you
said. |
| 3. <u>Násála níní</u> na líkambo
olobí? | What should I do about the
thing you just mentioned? |
| 4. Násála níní <u>mpóo náyéba
koloba Lingála?</u> | How should I go about learning
Lingala? |
| 5. <u>Lakísá ngái mayéle</u> mpóo
náyéba koloba Lingála. | Show me a good system for
learning Lingala. |
| 6. Lakísá ngái mayéle <u>ya
kolámba mpondú.</u> | Show me how to cook manioc
leaves. |
| 7. <u>Tokotúna nsima</u> ya kolámba
mpondú. | We'll discuss it after fixing
the manioc leaves. |
| 8. Tokotúna nsima <u>ya ndóbo.</u> | We'll discuss it after fishing. |
| 9. <u>Nakangáki mbísi míngí na
ndóbo.</u> | I caught a lot of fish with a
hook and line. |
| 10. Nakangáki mbísi míngí <u>na
ebale.</u> | I caught a lot of fish in
the river. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Bókendé kopésa mamá mabókó. | Go give mother a hand. |
| 2. Bókendé kopésa <u>tatá nkínga
ákendé mosálá.</u> | Go give your father the bicycle
so he can go to work. |
| 3. <u>Bongíséla</u> tatá nkínga
ákendé mosálá. | Fix the bicycle for your father
so he can go to work. |
| 4. Bongíséla <u>yé lokolo ya sapátu.</u> | Repair the shoes for him. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. <u>Babúngísélí</u> yé lokolo ya sapátu. | His shoes were lost. |
| 6. Babúngísélí <u>mwána</u> ndembó. | Somebody lost the child's ball. |
| 7. <u>Tatá</u> ya Pólo aákokende <u>kosómbela</u> mwána ndembó. | Paul's father is going to buy the child a ball. |
| 8. Tatá ya Pólo aákokende <u>kosómbela</u> <u>ngái</u> makei ya nsósó na zándu. | Paul's father is going to the market to buy me some eggs. |
| 9. <u>Mbanda</u> aákokende <u>kosómbela</u> <u>ngái</u> makei ya nsósó na zándu. | My co-wife has gone to the market to buy me some eggs. |
| 10. Mbanda <u>atumbí</u> nyama na <u>kúku</u> . | My co-wife roasted the meat in the kitchen. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nakótísí mótuka na ndáko na yangó. | I put the car in the garage/ carport. |
| 2. Nakótísí mótuka <u>na kátí</u> <u>ya lopángo</u> . | I parked the car in the yard/ driveway. |
| 3. <u>Bána</u> baákosakana na kátí ya lopángo. | The children are playing in the yard. |
| 4. <u>Bána</u> baákosakana <u>na libándá</u> <u>ya Stade Baudouin</u> . | The boys are going to play at Stade Baudouin. |
| 5. <u>Lisano</u> eékosálama na <u>libándá</u> ya Stade Baudouin. | The game is going to be played at Stade Baudouin. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Nazalaka na ndáko ya nsúka. | I live in the last house. |
| 2. Nazalaka na ndáko ya <u>libosó</u> . | I live in the first house. |
| 3. Nazalaka na ndáko <u>wáná ya mpémbe ya libosó</u> . | I live in the first white house. |
| 4. Nazalaka na ndáko <u>wáná na lobokó ya mwási</u> . | I live in the house on the left. |
| 5. Nazalaka na ndáko wáná na <u>lobokó ya mobáli</u> . | I live in the house on the right. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Etéyelo ezalí ya briki ya kotumba. | The school is made of fired bricks. |
| 2. Etéyelo <u>etóngamáki ntángu ya elanga</u> . | The school was built during the dry season. |
| 3. <u>Ndáko ya kolála etóngamáki ntángu ya elanga</u> . | The bedroom was built during the dry season. |
| 4. Ndáko ya kolála <u>ezalí mái ya mpondú</u> . | The bedroom is green. |
| 5. <u>Efándeli ya kelási ezalí mái ya mpondú</u> . | The desks are green. |
| 6. Efándeli ya kelási ezalí <u>sokolá</u> . | The desks are brown. |
| 7. <u>Eténi ya kobómba biléi ezalí sokolá</u> . | The pantry is painted brown. |

8. Eténi ya kobómba biléi
ekómbámáki. The pantry has been swept.
9. Ndáko nyónso ya kolála
bikómbámáki. All the bedrooms had been
swept.
10. Ndáko nyónso ya kolála
bisukwámáki na bakulútu
na ngái ya básí. All the bedrooms were mopped
by my older sisters.

Unit 19

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Mónica! Monique!

-B-

2. Mamá! Yes, Mother.

-A-

3. Wápi yó? Where are you?

-B-

4. Nazalí komísukola nzótu. I'm taking a bath.

-A-

nókí

fast, quick, prompt

5. Sálá nókí ósóbela ngái
bílókọ na zándú. Hurry up and go get me some
things at the market.

-B-

-zoka

to be injured, to be
touched

mosa1, monsa1,

finger, toe

mosap1, m1-

6. Tíndá María, namízokísákí Send Marie, I hurt my fingers
lóbí na minsal. yesterday.

- A-
7. Omízokísákí na níní? What did you hurt yourself with?
- B-
8. Na mbélí ya mésa. With a table knife.
- A-
9. Wápi epáí? Where were you?
- B-
- 'ville' city, town, downtown
10. Lóbí na ndáko ya moníngá Yesterday at one of my friend's
na ngái mókó na ville. house in town.
- A-
11. Bóongó, oókozila níní mpó Well, why are you waiting to
ókendé na múnganga? go to the doctor's?
- B-
12. Nakokendé nsima sókó I'll go later when I've finished
nasílísí komísukola. taking my bath.
- A-
- kitúnga, litúnga, ma- a basket with a lid
13. María, kamátá kitúnga Marie, take the market basket
ósómbela ngái bilókó and go buy me some things
na zándú. at the market.
- B-
- lipúta, ma- pagne, long wrap-around
skirt
- litambála, kitambála, handkerchief, towel, cloth,
ma- napkin

14. Mamá, nakomísómbela mpé
lipúta ná litambála
namónákí.
I'll also buy myself the pagne
and headscarf that I saw.

USEFUL PHRASES

- Motu ya kabínda aákokáta
monkólótó na kiliyó.
The carpenter is drawing a
line with a pencil.
- Motu ya kabínda azéngí ndámbo
ya libáyá.
The cabinetmaker cut off a
piece of the wood.
- Motu ya kabínda akobólí libáyá
na biténi.
The carpenter cut the piece of
wood in half.
- Mópe akangí gbagba fotó.
The priest took a picture of
the bridge.
- Mópe akangí bwátu fotó.
The priest took a picture of
the dugout canoe.
- Mópe akangí mokíli fotó na
masúwa.
The priest took a picture of
the mainland from the boat.
- Mópe azalí kolúka bwátu.
The priest is rowing the boat.
- Mópe azalí kolúka nkáí.
The priest is rowing.
- Mamá mokéngeli aákopúsa mwána
moké na púsupúsu.
The governess is pushing the
baby in the stroller.
- Mamá mokéngeli aákomelisa
mwána moké mílíki.
The babysitter is feeding the
baby milk.
- Mamá móbókóli aákolátisa
mwána moké bílambá.
The governess is dressing the
baby.
- Mamá móbókóli aákolakisa
mwána kokáta máí.
The babysitter is teaching the
child to swim.
- Abóngólí Angelé na Lingála.
He translated it from English
into Lingála.

Abóngólí káwa na sukáli.	He stirred sugar into his coffee.
Abóngólí kítí.	He turned the chair around.
Akwéí na kítí.	He turned over in the chair. He fell out of the chair.
Akweísí kítí na mabelé.	He turned the chair over.

kabínda, ba-	carpenter, cabinet-maker
-káta	to cut, chop
monkólótó, mí-	line
-zénga	to cut off, chop off
mópe, mómpé, ba- (mon père)	priest (Catholic)
gbagba	bridge
fotó (photo)	photograph, picture
bwátu, mátu	dugout canoe, native boat
mokíli, mí-	mainland, land, interior, inland, world
-luka	to row/paddle a boat
nkáí, n-	paddle, oar
-púsa (pousser?)	to push, shove
púsupúsu (pousse-pousse)	pushcart, baby carriage, stroller
mílikí	milk
-bókolo	to bring up, raise, rear, feed, breed (animal)
Angelé (anglais)	English
káwa	coffee
-kwéya	to fall; be involved in/lose a lawsuit

NOTES

19.1 Reflexive

Nazalí komísukola nzótu.

The reflexive prefix /-mí/ means 'to do something to/for oneself'. /-mí/ is prefixed to the base and occurs with all persons, e.g., /Nazalí komísukola nzotu/, 'I'm taking a bath', literally, 'I'm washing myself the body'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Namísukolaka nzótu na ntóngó nyónsọ. | I take a bath every morning. |
| 2. Namísukolaka nzótu na mpókwa nyónsọ. | I take a bath every evening. |
| 3. Amísómbelaka nyama na mpókwa nyónsọ. | He buys some meat for himself every evening. |
| 4. Amísómbelaka nyama epáí ya batékinyama. | He buys meat for himself at the butcher's (meatsellers'). |
| 5. Amízokísí epáí ya batékinyama. | He injured himself at the butcher's. |
| 6. Amízokísí na mbélí ya mésa. | He injured himself with a table knife. |
| 7. Amísálélí ekéko na mbélí ya mésa. | He made himself a statue with the knife. |
| 8. Amísálélí ndáko ya mabáyá. | He built himself a frame house. |
| 9. Tokomísómbela ndáko ya mabáyá. | We are going to buy ourselves a frame house. |
| 10. Tokomísómbela bilambá ya sika. | We are going to buy ourselves some new clothes. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ndáko ya bísú ezalí mpembéni na nzelá. | Our house is near the road. |
| 2. <u>Tomóni bána bakelási</u> mpembéni na nzelá. | We saw some school children near the road. |
| 3. Tomóni bána bakelási <u>na motéi na bangó.</u> | We saw some school children with their teacher. |
| 4. <u>Bayékoli bakendéki na ville</u> na motéi na bangó. | The students have gone into town with their teacher. |
| 5. Bayékoli bakendéki na ville <u>komísómbela sapátu.</u> | The students have gone into town to buy themselves some shoes. |
| 6. <u>Kulútu na ngái azalí kozila</u> mpó ámisómbela sapátu. | My brother is waiting to buy some shoes. |
| 7. Kulútu na ngái azalí kozila <u>ngái na nzelá.</u> | My brother is waiting for me out on the street. |
| 8. <u>Atíki</u> ngái na nzelá. | He let me out at the road. |
| 9. Atíki <u>bilambá na ndáko.</u> | He left the clothes at the house. |
| 10. <u>Atíndéli ngái</u> bilambá na ndáko. | She sent me the clothes at the house. |

Pattern Drill 1

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. Nazalí komítúna <u>sókó</u> mbúla ezalí <u>konókó.</u> | I wonder if it's raining. |
| 2. Nazalí komítúna <u>sókó akoyáa.</u> | I wonder if she's coming. |
| 3. Nazalí komítúna <u>mpó na nini</u> <u>ayáki lóbi.</u> | I wonder why he came yesterday. |

- | | | |
|-----|---|-------------------------------------|
| 4. | Nazalí komítúna <u>epáí azalí</u> . | I wonder where he is. |
| 5. | Nazalí komítúna <u>sókó azalí nani</u> . | I wonder who he is. |
| 6. | Nazalí komítúna <u>epáí natíkí mafungóla</u> . | I wonder where I put my keys. |
| 7. | Nazalí komítúna <u>ndéngé nini akómi áwa</u> . | I wonder how he got here. |
| 8. | Nazalí komítúna <u>ntángu nini akozónge</u> . | I wonder when he'll get back. |
| 9. | Nazalí komítúna <u>sókó ayébi epáí tozalí</u> . | I wonder if he knows where we are. |
| 10. | Nazalí komítúna <u>sókó azwí mokandá</u> . | I wonder if he received the letter. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | Mópe amísómbélí masíní ya fotó. | The priest bought himself a camera. |
| 2. | Mópe <u>abóngólí mokandá ya Angelé na Falansé</u> . | The priest translated the letter from English to French. |
| 3. | <u>Moyékwisi</u> abóngólí mokandá ya Angelé na Falansé. | The instructor translated the letter from English into French. |
| 4. | Moyékwisi <u>akwéí na kití</u> . | The instructor turned over in his chair. |
| 5. | <u>Mofúteli</u> akwéí na kití. | The tenant turned over in his chair. |
| 6. | Mofúteli <u>apésí ngái mbóngo ya ndáko</u> . | The tenant paid me the rent. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. <u>Kabínda</u> apésí ngái mbóngo ya ndáko. | The carpenter paid me the rent. |
| 8. Kabínda <u>abóngóláki ebómbeli</u> ya búuku. | The carpenter turned the bookcase around. |
| 9. <u>Bói apúpóli kátí</u> ya ebómbeli ya búuku. | The houseboy dusted the inside of the bookcase. |
| 10. Bói apúpóli <u>likoló</u> ya ebómbeli ya basáni. | The houseboy dusted the outside of the china cabinet. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Abóngóli káwa na sukáli. | He stirred sugar into his coffee. |
| 2. <u>Mónika</u> abóngóli káwa na sukáli. | Monique stirred sugar into her coffee. |
| 3. Mónika <u>alingí litambála</u> na lipúta. | Monique wants a pagne and kerchief. |
| 4. <u>Léki na yé aákosómba mpé</u> litambála na lipúta. | Her younger sister is also going to buy a pagne and kerchief. |
| 5. Léki na yé aákosómba mpé <u>mbéli</u> ya kúku. | Her younger sister is also going to buy a butcher knife. |
| 6. <u>Namíkati monsaí</u> na mbéli ya kúku. | I cut my finger with a butcher knife. |
| 7. Namíkati monsaí na <u>monoko</u> ya ndáko. | I cut my finger on the door. |
| 8. <u>Tokotiya mokóbo</u> ya máí ya mpondú na monoko ya ndáko. | We will paint the door again. |
| 9. Tokotiya mokóbo ya máí ya mpondú <u>na bilambá</u> ya sika. | We are going to dye the new dress green. |
| 10. Tokotiya mokóbo ya máí <u>ya malála</u> na bilambá ya sika. | We are going to dye the new dresses orange. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Mamá mokéngeli aákopúsa
mwána moké na púsupúsu. | The babysitter is pushing the
baby in the buggy. |
| 2. <u>Kóko mwási</u> aákopúsa mwána
moké na púsupúsu. | The grandmother is pushing the
baby in the buggy. |
| 3. Kóko mwási <u>aákolátisa mwána</u>
<u>moké bilambá.</u> | The grandmother is dressing
the baby. |
| 4. <u>Tatá mwási</u> aákolatísa mwána
moké bilambá. | The (baby's) aunt is dressing
the baby. |
| 5. Tatá mwási <u>aákoléisa</u> mwána
moké. | The (baby's) aunt is feeding
the baby. |
| 6. <u>Kulútu mwási</u> aákoléisa
mwána moké. | The (baby's) older sister is
feeding the baby. |
| 7. Kulútu mwási <u>akangí mwána</u>
<u>moké fotó.</u> | The (baby's) older sister took
a picture of the baby. |
| 8. <u>Mópe</u> akangí mwána moké
fotó. | The priest took the baby's
picture. |
| 9. Mópe <u>azaláki kotánga</u>
<u>zulunálo ya leló.</u> | The priest was reading today's
paper. |
| 10. <u>Kabínda atóngí ndáko ya</u>
<u>bísú azaláki kotánga</u>
zulunálo ya leló. | The carpenter who built our
house was reading today's
paper. |

19.2 Compound Agent Nouns

Amísómbelaka epái ya batékinyama.

/batékinyama/ is a compound agent noun, meaning 'meatsellers'. The agentive element is first and the qualifying noun second, e.g., /batékinyama/ is literally 'sellersmeat', and /molukinyama/, 'hunter' is literally 'searcheranimal'. Both nouns in this type of compound have their class prefixes, singular and plural, as the case

may be. Such a compound noun is written as a single word in this manual, but regular orthography writes two words.

19.3 Kinship Terminology.

Tatá mwási áákoléisa mwána moké.

The system of classifying relatives used by speakers of Lingala is quite different from that used by speakers of English. Consequently, translation of kinship terms can only be approximated. In the example above, 'The (baby's) aunt is feeding the baby', /tatá mwási/ corresponds only partially to 'aunt'. It means 'father's sister' and certain other female relatives of one's father, e.g., 'paternal grandfather's brother's daughter'.

One's mother's sister is /mamá/ i.e., 'mother', likewise /tatá/ is also 'father's brother.' There is a special term for 'maternal uncle', /nókó/, (Cf. Dialogue 6.)

There is not sufficient space in this manual for a detailed discussion of social organization and kinship terminology. Interested students can read a standard anthropological work, such as Murdock, G.P., Social Structure, Macmillan, New York, 1949.

Unit 20

Basic Sentences

-A-

'ambassade'

embassy

1. Áwa Ambassade ya Amérique? Is this the American Embassy?

-B-

2. Yangó mpenzá. Oókoluka
níní? Indeed it is. What do you
want?

-A-

viza (visa)

visa

mobémbo, m1-

journey, trip

3. Nayéí mpó na visa. Nalingí
nákendé mobémbo na Amérique. I've come for a visa. I want
to make a trip to America.

-B-

4. Okendé kosála níní kúná? What do you intend to do there?

-A-

5. Nakeí koyékola. I'm leaving to go to school.

-B-

6. Osílí omíkomísí nkómbó na
université óyo okokendé? Have you already been admitted
to the university to which
you are going?

-A-

7. Éé, na Université ya
California. Yes, at the University of
California.

- B-
8. Elókọ níni okoyékola? What are you going to study?
- A-
9. Sciences économiques. Economics.
- B-
10. Mbúla bóni okoumela kúná? How many years are you going
to stay?
- A-
11. Minei toó mítánu. Four or five.
- B-
12. Náni akofútela yó kelási,
babótí? Who will pay for your school-
ing, your parents?
- A-
- 'bourse d'études' scholarship
13. Nazwákí bourse d'études na I have received a scholarship
gouvernement américain. from the American Government.
- B-
- tǒndǒ to wish, hope, thank
mobémbo, mí- trip, journey, voyage
ó toward, to; at, in, on, by
14. Malámu, naákotǒndǒ yó Fine, I hope you have a good
mobémbo malámu ó Amériqúe, trip to America, and study
mpé óyékolaka makási. hard.
- B-
15. Melesi, ótikala malámu, Thanks, and goodbye, in case
sókó tokomónana lisúsu we don't see each other
té. again.

USEFUL PHRASES

Moyángelı ya b́ankı at́ond́ıśı ngáı fıısı.	The bank manager had me fill out some forms.
Moyángelı ya b́ankı at́ond́ıśelı ngáı fıısı.	The bank manager filled out some forms for me.
Moyángelı ya b́ankı apésı ngáı fıısı mpó nat́ond́ısa.	The bank manager gave me some forms to fill out.
Ífo názwa mb́ongó na b́ankı.	I have to withdraw some money from the bank.
Ífo názwela mwána na ngáı ya mobálı mbwá.	I have to get my son a dog.
Ífo názwela mwána na ngáı ya mwásı nḱond́okó.	I have to get my daughter a cat.
Tolobákılóbákı butú mobımba.	We chatted all night.
Totámbólıtámbólı butú mobımba.	We walked all night.
Tobétıbétı makolo butú mobımba.	We walked all night.
Tokatı nzeté ndámbondámbo.	We cut the log up into pieces.
Tokatı nzeté biténıbiténi.	We cut the log up into pieces.
Nakanákı náķende.	I wish I could go.
Nakanısákı mbúla eéķokātana konóķo.	I wish it would stop raining.
Nakanákı kosómba mótuķa na sánzá eleķı.	I wish I could have bought a car last month.
Naáķokana kosómba mótuķa na sánzá ekoyáa.	I wish I could buy a car next month.
Naáķokana násómba mótuķa na sánza óyo.	I wish I could buy a car this month.

-yángela	to manage, administrate, arrange
bánkɪ (banque)	bank
físɪ (fiche)	form, blank
ífo (il faut)	it is necessary to, one has to has to
mbwá, m-	dog
nkóndokó, n-	cat

NOTES

20.1 /ífo/ plus Subjunctive

Ífo názwa mbóngo na bánkɪ.

/ífo/, French, 'il faut', 'it's necessary to', 'one has to', followed a Lingala subjunctive occurs very frequently, as in the sentence above, 'I have to withdraw money from the bank'. /ebóngí/ and /ífo/ may be freely substituted for one another in this type of construction.

20.2 Reduplication for Intensity

Tolobákílobákí butú míngɪ.

The base of a stem may be reduplicated or doubled for intensity, e.g., /tolobákílobákí/ 'we chatted', 'we talked and talked'. In a reduplicated stem, only the tone of the first syllable of the first base is fixed. Other syllables have tones as described in Note 2.2.

20.3 Wishes, Intentions, Plans

Nakanákí náķendę

Wishes, intentions, and plans are expressed by /-kána/ or

/-kánisa/, e.g., the sentence above translates, 'I have decided to go', 'I wish I could go', 'I intend to go', 'I believe I will go'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Oyébí motu mókó na Amérique? | Do you know anyone in America? |
| 2. Oyébí <u>Ambassade ya Amérique</u> ? | Do you know where the American Embassy is? |
| 3. <u>Áwa</u> Ambassade ya Amérique? | Is this the American Embassy? |
| 4. <u>Áwa esíká ya kobwáka mikandá</u> ? | Is this the post office? |
| 5. <u>Azali</u> esíká ya kobwáka mikandá? | Has he gone to the post office? |
| 6. <u>Azali kobóngisa bilóko mpó na mobémbo.</u> | He is packing his things for a trip. |
| 7. <u>Bamosúsu bazali</u> kobóngisa bilóko mpó na mobémbo. | The others are packing their bags. |
| 8. Bamosúsu bazali <u>mpembéni ya mésa.</u> | The others are (sitting) at the table. |
| 9. <u>Mónganga azali</u> mpembéni ya mésa. | The doctor is (standing) by the table. |
| 10. <u>Mónganga azali kosálisha motu amízokísákí.</u> | The doctor is taking care of the man who hurt himself. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nasílísí mosálá na ngái. | I've just finished my work. |
| 2. Nasílí <u>kosála mosálá na ngái.</u> | I've already finished my work. |
| 3. <u>Nakeí</u> kosála mosálá na ngái. | I'm (just) leaving for work. |
| 4. Nakeí <u>kosílisha mosálá na ngái.</u> | I'm getting back to work. I'm going to continue working. |
| 5. <u>Nazali</u> kosílisha mosálá na ngái. | I'm about to finish my work. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Naákoleka mpembéni na ndáko. I'm going by (near) the house.
2. Naákoleka na katikáti na ndáko. I'm going through the house.
3. Naákobima na ndáko. I'm coming out of the house.
4. Naákotika ndáko. I'm going away from the house.
5. Naákotika na ndáko. I'm leaving it in the house.
6. Nakei na ndáko. I'm entering the house. I'm going home.
7. Nakei ó ndáko. I'm going to(ward) the house.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Azali ó esika ya kobwaka mikandá. He is at the post office.
2. Akëndéki ó esika ya kobwaka mikandá. He went to the post office.
3. Akëndéki ó zándó. He went to the market.
4. Nazali kokendé ó zándó. I'm on my way to the market.
5. Nazali kokendé ó Amérique. I'm going to America.
6. Nakei na Amérique. I'm leaving for America.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Babéngáká yé Pólo. They named him Paul. His name is Paul.
2. Babéngí yé Pólo. They called him Paul (by mistake).
3. Babéngí bilókó na Mpútú. They ordered some things from Europe.

4. Babéngí ngáí na tẹlẹfón
na Mpútú. They phoned me from Europe.
5. Atẹlẹfónákí ngáí na Mpútú. He phoned me from Europe.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Tolobákílóbákí míngí. We chatted a long time.
2. Batámbólítámbólí míngí. They walked a very long way.
3. Batámbólítámbólí mọkọlọ
mobimba. They walked the whole day.
4. Motu asálákí mọkọlọ mobimba. The man worked all day.
5. Motu asálaka míkọlọ nyónsọ. The man worked every day.
6. Motu asálaka bífándelí ya
mabáyá. The man makes wooden chairs.
7. Mwásí amísómbélí bífándelí
ya mabáyá. The woman bought herself some
wooden chairs.
8. Mwásí amísómbélí sapáto ya
síka. The woman bought herself some
new shoes.
9. Apésí bangó sapáto ya síka. She gave them new shoes.
10. Apésí bangó matambála ya
kala. She gave them some old head-
scarfs.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Ebọngí nákẹndẹ na avíọ. I have to go by plane.
2. Ífo nákẹndẹ na avíọ. I have to go by plane.
3. Ífo nákẹndẹ kokamata mwásí
akoyáa na avíọ. I have to go get my wife who'll
be arriving by plane.
4. Ebọngí nákẹndẹ kokamata
mwásí akoyáa na avíọ. I have to go get my wife who'll
be arriving by plane.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. Ebongí <u>lóbí na ntóngó</u>
<u>álongwa na mpóngi na</u>
<u>ntángu malámu.</u> | He has to get up early tomorrow morning. |
| 6. <u>Ífo</u> lóbí na ntóngó álongwa
na mpóngi ntángu malámu. | He has to get up early tomorrow morning. |
| 7. Ífo <u>bátóndisa físi libosó</u>
<u>ya kokende.</u> | They had to fill out some forms before leaving. |
| 8. <u>Ebongí</u> bátóndisa físi
libosó ya kokende. | They had to fill out some forms before leaving. |
| 9. Ebongí <u>tóbóngola leló</u>
<u>mabelé ó lisálá.</u> | We have to plow the field today. |
| 10. <u>Ífo</u> tóbóngola leló mabelé
ó lisálá. | We have to plow the field today. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nakanísákí mbúla eékokatana
konókó. | I wish it would stop raining. |
| 2. Nakanísákí <u>nakokákí kosómba</u>
<u>mótuka ya sika.</u> | I wish I could buy a new car. |
| 3. <u>Nakanákí násómba</u> mótuca
ya sika. | I wish I could buy a new car. |
| 4. Nakanákí <u>nákende.</u> | I wish I could go. |
| 5. Nakanákí <u>kosómba mótuca</u>
<u>na sánzá elekí.</u> | I wish I could have bought a car last month. |
| 6. Naákokana kosómba mótuca
<u>na sánzá ekoyáa.</u> | I wish I could buy a car next month. |
| 7. <u>Nakanísí akosómba</u> mótuca
na sánzá ekoyáa. | I think he will buy a car next month. |

8. Nakanísí akoyáa na sánzá ekoyáa. I believe he's coming next month.
9. Nakanísákí akoyáa na sánzá elekí. I thought he was coming last month.
10. Nakanísákí akoyáa ntángu tozaláká na Bóma. I wish he had come when we lived at Boma.

Unit 21

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Ekomeli na ngái ebúngí. My pencil is lost. Have you
 Omóní yangó tẹ? seen it?

-B-

2. Tẹ, otiyí yangó epái No, where did you put it?
 wápi?

-A-

3. Natíkákí yangó líkoló I put it on the table, but it
 ya mésa, kási sika isn't there now.
 áwa ezalí tẹ.

-B-

4. Omóní na nsé ya mésa? Did you look under the table?
 Ntángu mosúsú ekwéi Maybe it fell off.
 na nsé.

-A-

5. Óo, yangó wána. Elálí Oh, there it is. It's lying
 na nsé ya mésa kási under the table next to the
 mpembéni ya ndáko. wall.

-B-

-gumba

to fold, bend, stoop

-lókọtọ

to pick up, gather, collect

14. Sókí boye, defísá ngái
ekomeli na yó mókó,
násála mísála na ngái. If that's the case, lend me
one of your pencils so I
can do my homework.

-B-

15. Kamátá! Take one!

USEFUL PHRASES

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ezali na efelo. | It's on the wall. |
| Ezali penepene ya efelo. | It's near the wall. |
| Ezali katikati ya efelo. | It's inside the wall. |
| Akatisi zamba. | He went through the forest. |
| Atamboli na zamba. | He took a walk outside. He's
gone hunting. |
| Akei na zamba. | He went into the interior.
He's gone hunting. |
| Benda mpema. | Inhale. |
| Bimisa mpema. | Exhale. |
| Tombala radio otia mpembeni. | Pick up the radio and put
it over there. |
| Fungola radio. | Turn the radio on. |
| Kanga radio. | Turn the radio off. |
| Kanga masini ya kokaukisa
bilamba. | Turn the clothes drier off. |
| Fungola masini ya kokaukisa
bilamba. | Turn the clothes drier on. |
| Pelisa mwinda. | Light the lamp. Turn the
light(s) on. |

Bomá mwínda.	Extinguish the lamp. Turn the light(s) off.
Tiyá prise ya frigó.	Connect the refrigerator.
Tiyá mótò na litúká.	Turn the stove on.
Tiyá prise.	Connect the plug.
Longóla prise.	Disconnect the plug.
Béndá prise.	Disconnect the plug.
Béndá prise ya frigó.	Disconnect the refrigerator.
Bomá litúká.	Turn the stove off.
efelo, bi-	wall
pɛnɛpɛnɛ	near, close, by, against
katíkátí	in between, in the middle/ center of
zámba	woods, forest, jungle; interior, outside, country
mpéma, m-	breath
-tómbala	to pick up, lift, carry
rádio, radió	radio
-kauka, -kaoka	to be(come) dry
frigó (frigo)	refrigerator
litúká, ma-	three stones used to cook on, cook stove
'prise'	plug (electrical)

21.1 Double Spatial Relationships

Elálí na nsé ya mésa kási mpembéni ya ndáko.

When specifying the location of objects in relation to two other objects, (1) a particle such as /kási/, 'but', or (2) a

pause, /,/ , occurs between the two reference locations, or (3) one reference location is in a subordinate clause, e.g., (1) /Elá lí na nsé ya mésa kási mpembéni ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (but) next to the wall.', (2) /Elá lí na nsé ya mésa, mpembéni ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (,) next to the wall'. or (3) /Bízalá kí líkoló ya búuku óyo ezalá kí líkoló ya mésa./, 'They were on the book (which is) on the table.'

21.2 Partitive

mókó na kátí na bínú.

míbalé na kátí na bangó

/...na kátí na/ya.../ is a partitive construction, i.e., it refers to some or part of a group or whole, e.g., /mókó na kátí na bínú/, 'one of you', /míbalé na kátí na bangó/, 'two of them'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Ekomeli na ngái ebúngí. | My pencil is lost. |
| 2. <u>Mwána ya mobáli</u> abúngí. | The boy is lost. |
| 3. <u>Mwána ya mobáli akwéi.</u>
na mbétu. | The boy fell off the bed. |
| 4. <u>Ekomeli ya mái ya mokandá</u>
ekwéi na mbétu. | The pen fell off the bed. |
| 5. Ekomeli ya mái ya mokandá
<u>ekwéi na nsé ya mésa.</u> | The pen fell under the table. |
| 6. <u>Mokandá</u> ekwéi na nsé ya
mésa. | The letter fell under the table. |
| 7. Mokandá <u>eúti na tata.</u> | The letter is from my father. |
| 8. <u>Mbóngó</u> eúti na tata. | The money is from my father. |
| 9. Mbóngó <u>ekokí tẹ.</u> | There isn't enough money. |
| 10. <u>Mái</u> ekokí tẹ. | There isn't enough water. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ezalí na nsé ya kítí kásí mpembéni ya ndáko. | It's under the chair next to the wall. |
| 2. Ezalí <u>na nsé kásí na kátí ya mésa míbalé.</u> | It's on the floor between the two desks. |
| 3. <u>Bízalákí</u> na nsé kásí na kátí ya mésa míbalé. | They were on the floor between the two tables. |
| 4. <u>Bízalákí líkoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí líkoló ya mésa.</u> | They were on the book on the table. |
| 5. <u>Natíyákí yangó</u> líkoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí líkoló ya mésa. | I put them on the book on the table. |
| 6. Natíyákí yangó <u>na kátí ya búuku óyo ezalákí penepene ya telefón.</u> | I put them in the book by the telephone. |
| 7. <u>Nazwákí yangó</u> na kátí ya búuku óyo ezalákí penepene ya telefón. | I found it in a book by the telephone. |
| 8. Nazwákí yangó <u>epái otikákí.</u> | I found it when you left it. |
| 9. <u>Ezalí nainu</u> epái otikákí. | It's still where you left it. |
| 10. Ezalí nainu <u>líkoló ya mésa na eténi ya kolía.</u> | It's still in the dining room on the table. |

Pattern Drill 1

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Ekomeli elálí na nsé ya mésa. | The pencil is under the table. |
| 2. Ekomeli elálí na <u>líkoló</u> ya mésa. | The pencil is on the table. |
| 3. Ekomeli elálí na <u>nsima</u> ya mésa. | The pencil is behind the table. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Ekomeli elá lí na <u>libosó</u>
ya mésa. | The pencil is in front of the
table. |
| 5. Ekomeli elá lí na <u>mpembéni</u>
ya mésa. | The pencil is lying near the
table. |
| 6. Ekomeli elá lí na <u>nsúka</u> ya
mésa. | The pencil is lying at the edge
of the table. |
| 7. Ekomeli elá lí <u>penepene</u> na
mésa. | The pencil is lying (right) by
the table. |
| 8. Ekomeli elá lí <u>mosiká</u> na
mésa. | The pencil is a long way from
the table. |
| 9. Ekomeli <u>eláléli</u> mésa. | The pencil is leaning against
the table. |
| 10. Ekomeli <u>ezali</u> na <u>káti</u> ya
mésa. | The pencil is in the table. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Balókóti nzeté na libándá
mpó na kobénda ekomeli. | They picked up a stick outside
to rake the pencil out with. |
| 2. <u>Kamatá</u> nzeté na libándá
mpó na kobénda ekomeli. | Get a stick outside to rake the
pencil out with. |
| 3. Kamatá <u>ekomeli na ngái</u>
<u>mókó ósála na yangó.</u> | Take one of my pencils to do
your work with.
(Take pencil of me one, you work
with it.) |
| 4. Zwá ekomeli na ngái <u>mókó</u>
<u>ósála na yangó.</u> | Take one of my pencils to do
your homework with. |
| 5. Zwá <u>oyo nalobí na yó.</u> | Take what I told you. |
| 6. <u>Bósála</u> oyo nalobí na binú. | Do what I told you. |
| 7. Bósála <u>mosálá na binú</u>
<u>libosó molíli ékwéya.</u> | Do the work before night falls. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 8. <u>Ebongí mókó na kátí na</u>
<u>binú ásilísa mosálá</u>
libosó molilí ékwéya. | One of you has to finish the
work before night falls. |
| 9. Ebongí mókó na kátí na
binú ásilísa mosála
<u>libosó mói ébima.</u> | One of you has to finish the
job before the sun rises. |
| 10. <u>Ífo míbalé na kátí na</u>
<u>bangó básilísa mosálá</u>
libosó mói ébima. | Two of them have to finish
the job before the sun
comes up. |

Pattern Drill 2

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Yáká <u>kosálisa</u> ngái
nálongola mésa. | Come help me move the table
out. |
| 2. Yáká <u>ósálisa</u> ngái
nálongola mésa. | Come help me move the table
out. |
| 3. Yáká <u>kobéndisa</u> ngái
<u>sandúku.</u> | Come help me move the trunk. |
| 4. Yáká <u>óbéndisa</u> ngái
sandúku. | Come help me move the trunk. |
| 5. Yáká <u>kofwándisa</u> ngái. | Come over for a chat. Come
over and keep me company. |
| 6. Yáká <u>ófwándisa</u> ngái. | Come over for a chat. Come
over and keep me company. |
| 7. Yáká <u>kogumbisa</u> ngái
<u>bilambá ya mbétu.</u> | Come help me fold the sheets. |
| 8. Yáká <u>ógumbisa</u> ngái
bilambá ya mbétu. | Come help me fold the sheets. |
| 9. Yáká <u>tógumba</u> bilambá
ya mbétu. | Come, let's fold the sheets. |
| 10. Yáká <u>tóbénda sandúku.</u> | Come, let's move the trunk. |

Pattern Drill 3

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ezalí líkoló ya mésa,
pɛnɛpɛnɛ ya tási. | It's on the table next to the
cup. |
| 2. Ezalí líkoló ya mésa, <u>kási</u>
pɛnɛpɛnɛ ya tási. | It's on the table next to the
cup. |
| 3. Ezalí <u>na mabelé, pɛnɛpɛnɛ</u>
<u>ya mɔnɔkɔ ya ndáko.</u> | It's on the floor by the door. |
| 4. Ezalí na mabelé, <u>kási</u>
pɛnɛpɛnɛ ya mɔnɔkɔ
ya ndáko. | It's on the floor by the door. |
| 5. Ezalí <u>líkoló ya mésa, na</u>
<u>kátɪ ya búuku míbalé.</u> | It's on the table between the
books. |
| 6. Ezalí líkoló ya mésa, <u>kási</u>
na kátɪ ya búuku míbalé. | It's on the table between the
books. |
| 7. Ezalí <u>na kátɪ ya lɪnzanza,</u>
<u>na nsé ya mbétu.</u> | It's in a box under the bed. |
| 8. Ezalí na kátɪ ya lɪnzanza,
<u>kási</u> na nsé ya mbétu. | It's in a box under the bed. |
| 9. Ezalí <u>na kátɪ ya sání,</u>
<u>líkoló ya lɪnɪnɪsa.</u> | It's on a plate in the window. |
| 10. Ezalí na kátɪ ya sání,
<u>kási</u> líkoló ya lɪnɪnɪsa. | It's on a plate in the window. |

- B-
8. Nayébi tẹ́, mpó otobísi
mókó ya Kimwénza eleki
mwáa sika óyo. I don't know because a bus
to Kimwenza went by just
a moment ago.
- A-
9. Yébísá ngái náinu, otobísi
ezalaka mpé malámu na
kátí? Tell me, is the interior of
this bus clean?
- B-
10. Ezalí malámu, mabé ndé
makélele míngí. It's clean, only there's lots
of noise.
- A-
11. Longwá áwa tíi na Kimwénza
baarrets bizalí bóni? From here to Kimwenza how many
stops are there?
- B-
- mpámba free, worthless, only,
without reason, vain
12. Nakanísí míbalé toó
mísátu mpámba. I believe only two or three.
- A-
13. Tálélá ngái náinu kúná,
óyo wáná búsi ya Kimwénza? Look over there, isn't that
the bus to Kimwenza?
- B-
- makilá blood; fate, destiny
14. Ozalí na makilá malámu
leló, yangó wáná búsi
ya Kimwénza. You're in luck today, it's
the Kimwenza bus.

USEFUL PHRASES

Epáí wápi bazwáká taksí?	Where is the taxi stand?
Epáí wápi gare ya otobísi ezalí?	Where is the bus station?
Epáí wápi gare ya masíni ezalí?	Where is the train station?
Epáí wápi libándá ya avió ezalí?	Where is the airport?
Epáí wápi libóngó ya masúwa ezalí?	Where is the ferry crossing?
	Where is the harbor?
Tiyá kítí ya bíbendé na balasáni.	Put the metal chairs on the veranda.
Tiyá kítí ya nkékéle na balasáni.	Put the wicker chairs on the veranda.
Tiyá ekóló ya nkékéle na balasáni.	Put the basket on the porch.
Masó akotóbola ndéle línínisa na efelo.	The mason will cut a window in the wall some time in the future.
Masó akotóbola línínisa na efelo mọkọlọ nsima ya lóbí.	The mason will cut a window in the wall the day after tomorrow.
Masó akotóbola línínisa na efelo nsima ya mıkọlọ mísátu.	The mason will cut a window in the wall three days from now. (See Note 22.2.)
Masó atóbólákí línínisa na efelo lóbílóbí elekí.	The mason cut a window in the wall the day before yesterday.
Masó atóbólákí línínisa na efelo mıkọlọ mísátu mílekí.	The mason cut a window in the wall three days ago.
Lọkótó matọkó.	Pick up the sleeping mats.
Lọkótó nkóní.	Gather some firewood.
Lọkótó biténi ya talatála.	Pick up the pieces of the mirror.

taksí (taxi)	taxicab
gare	station
libóngó, ma-	shore, quay, wharf, dock
balasáni	veranda, porch; hat brim
nkékélé, n-	cane, reed, liana, wickerwork
masó (maçon)	mason, bricklayer
-tóbóló	to pierce, puncture; speak ill of someone
ndéle	some time, in the future
litókó, ma-	mat, sleeping mat
nkóni, n-	firewood
talatála	mirror, pane of glass, spectacles, lamp, chimney

NOTES

22.1 /longwá áwa tíi na Kimwénza/
Review Notes 8.9 and 9.5

22.2 /nsima ya mikóló misátu/

The meaning of the above phrase is ambiguous. The speaker on whose speech this manual is based uses this phrase only in the sense, 'three days from now', but many persons use this phrase to mean 'two days from now'.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- Otobísí óyo ekokéndé wápi? Where is this bus going?
- Otobísí óyo ekotéleme na Marénsa. This bus is going to Marenza.
- Otobísí óyo ekokóma na Kimwénza. This bus will take you to Kimwenza.
- Nakamátí bús na Kimwénza. I took the bus to Kimwenza.
- Nakamátí bús mbala mókó. I took the bus (only) once.
- Okotéleme na arrê^t mbala mókó. The bus will stop (only) once.

7. Sókó okamátí yangó,
okotéléme na arrêt. If you take that one, you'll stop only once (i.e., you get off at the second bus stop.)
8. Sókó okamátí yangó, okokóma
nókí. If you take this one, you'll get there quickly.
9. Sókó olingí óyo wáná,
okokóma nókí. If you take that one, you'll get there fast.
10. Sókó olingí óyo wáná, ezalí
malámu mabé ndé makelélé. If you take that one, it's O.K. but there's a lot of noise.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Okanísí ngonga bóní? How long do you think it will be?
2. Okanísí arrêts ya otobísí
bızalí bóní? How many stops do you think the bus makes?
3. Arrêts ya otobísí bızalí
bóní na Kimwénza? How many stops are there on the way to Kimwenza?
4. Okotónga ndáko mísátu
na Kimwénza. You are going to build three houses at Kimwenza.
5. Okotónga ndáko mísátu sókó
osómbí esíká otélémi. If you buy the ground where you are standing, you can build three houses on it.
6. Okomiyíbisa bılókó sókó
osómbí esíká otélémi. If you buy that place, you'll be the cause of your things being stolen yourself. (i.e., knowing the danger of theft there, you would be foolish to make it easy for thieves.)
7. Okomiyíbisa bılókó sókó
akóti na ndáko. If you go into the house, you'll be responsible for anything that's stolen.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 8. <u>Okolobaloba míngi sókó akóti na ndáko.</u> | If he goes into the house, you'll talk and talk. |
| 9. Okolobaloba míngi <u>ntángu akokende na Amérique.</u> | You'll complain a lot when he goes to America. |
| 10. Ntángu akokende na Amérique <u>nakozala malámu.</u> | If you go to America, I'll be all right. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Motu ya kabinda akáti mwáa eteni ya libáyá. | The carpenter cut a notch in the wood. |
| 2. Motu ya kabinda <u>alongóli mwáa ndámbo ya libáyá.</u> | The cabinetmaker cut out a notch in the wood. |
| 3. <u>Motu mókó</u> alongóli mwáa ndámbo ya libáyá. | Someone cut out a notch in the wood. |
| 4. Motu mókó <u>afungóláki masíni ya kosukola bilambá.</u> | Someone turned on the washing machine. |
| 5. Motu mókó <u>akangáki masíni ya kosukola bilambá.</u> | Someone turned off the washing machine. |
| 6. <u>Mobongisi</u> akangáki masíni ya kosukola bilambá. | The repairman turned off the washing machine. |
| 7. Mobongisi <u>akatísi lisálá na mbángu.</u> | The repairman crossed the field on the run. |
| 8. <u>Mbwá</u> ekatísi lisálá na mbángu. | The dog crossed the field in a hurry. |
| 9. Mbwá <u>elálaka na nsé ya ndáko.</u> | The dog sleeps under the house. |
| 10. Mbwá elálaka <u>na kátí ya ndáko mibalé.</u> | The dog sleeps between the houses. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Tíyá kítí ya nkékélé na balasáni. | Put the wicker chairs on the porch. |
| 2. Tíyá kítí <u>ya mabáya na kúku.</u> | Put the wooden chairs in the kitchen. |
| 3. <u>Masó akotóbola ndéle linínisa</u> na kúku. | The mason will cut a window in the kitchen some time later in the future. |
| 4. Masó akotóbola ndéle linínisa <u>na ndáko ya kolía.</u> | The mason will cut a window in the dining room one of these days. |
| 5. <u>Tandá matókó nyónso</u> na ndáko ya kolía. | Spread all the mats in the dining room. |
| 6. Tandá matókó nyónso <u>na mói mpó mákauka.</u> | Spread all the mats in the sun to dry. |
| 7. <u>Bóí atíkí</u> matókó nyónso na mói mpó mákauka. | The house boy left all the mats in the sun to dry. |
| 8. Bóí atíkí <u>mésa ya nkékélé na libándá.</u> | The boy left the wicker table outside. |
| 9. <u>Náni</u> atíkí mésa ya nkékélé na libándá? | Who left the wicker table outside? |
| 10. <u>Náni</u> atíkí mésa ya <u>bibendé</u> na libándá? | Who left the metal table outside? |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Leló mọkọlọ ya kosukola bilambá. | Today is wash day. |
| 2. Leló mọkọlọ ya <u>kobongisa ndáko.</u> | Today is housecleaning day. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. <u>Bána ya mosála babongísí</u>
ndáko. | The domestics straightened up
the house. |
| 4. Bána ya mosála <u>baákopasola</u>
<u>nkóni</u> . | The domestics are splitting
firewood. |
| 5. <u>Andelé</u> aákopasola nkóni. | André splitting firewood. |
| 6. Andelé <u>azílákí tata</u>
<u>ákendé mosála</u> . | André was waiting for the boss
to leave for work. |
| 7. <u>Andelé na Alobé bazílákí</u>
tata ákendé na mosála. | André and Albert are waiting
for the boss to leave for
work. |
| 8. Andelé na Alobé <u>baákobímisa</u>
<u>kítí na mésa na libánda</u> . | André and Albert are bringing
the table and chairs outside. |
| 9. <u>Batóngi ndáko</u> baákobímisa
kítí na mésa na libánda. | The masons are bringing the
table and chairs outside. |
| 10. Batóngi ndáko <u>baákojóka</u>
<u>molungé míngi na nzótu</u> . | The masons are too hot. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Mwána óyo azalí na mayéle
mokúsé. | This child is mentally retarded. |
| 2. Mwána óyo <u>aákokómbo</u> talatála
<u>na eténi ya elambá</u> . | The child is wiping the mirror
with a piece of cloth. |
| 3. <u>Kulútu na ngái</u> aákokómbo
talatála na eténi ya
elambá. | My sister is wiping the mirror
with a piece of cloth. |
| 4. Kulútu na ngái <u>azaláká</u> na
<u>mótuka ya mwíndu</u> . | My brother used to have a black
automobile. |
| 5. <u>Mokómbo</u> balabálá azaláká
na mótuka ya mwíndu. | The streetcleaner used to have
a black automobile. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. Mokómbi balabála <u>azalí na makilá malámu leló.</u> | The road repairman was lucky today. |
| 7. <u>Léki na yé</u> azalí na makilá malámu leló. | Your brother was lucky today. |
| 8. Léki na yé <u>alongóli bolangiti na bilambá nyónso ya mbétu.</u> | Your sister took off the blanket and all the bed clothes. |
| 9. <u>Nayébi té nani</u> alongóli bolangiti na bilambá nyónso ya mbétu. | I don't know who took off the blankets and all the bed clothes. |
| 10. Nayébi té <u>epái ya gare ya masini ezalí.</u> | I don't know where the train station is. |

- A-
7. Lɛlɔ́ kó! na mpokwá! Yes indeed, this afternoon.
- B-
8. Sɔ́kí bána bazaláki áwa,
ndé tokeí bisu míbalé. If the children were here, we
would go together.
9. Michel bangó na mwási na Michel and his wife really love
yé balíngáni míngi mpénza. each other.
- A-
10. Ezalí ya sɔ́ɔlɔ́! Bolíngo That's true. They have loved
na bangó eútá bomwána. each other since childhood.
- B-
11. Nsima ya Ndáko-Nzámbé, After (having been at) the
bokokɛndɛ kobína wápi? church, where are you going
to dance?
- A-
12. Nakanísí na ndáko ya Michel. I believe at Michel's house.
- B-
13. Ózóngaka ntángu malámu! Come home at a reasonable hour.

USEFUL PHRASES

- Mamɛ́lɔ́ azalí kosámbela. The nun is praying.
- Mamɛ́lɔ́ azalí kotanga búuku The nun is reading (from) the
ya bisámbo. prayerbook.
- Mamɛ́lɔ́ alátí sutáni ya mpémbé. The nun is wearing a long
white robe.
- Mópe aákobálisa balóngani. The priest is marrying the
couple.

Pastéle aákobálisa balóngani.	The minister is marrying the couple.
Lopété ya maliási ezalí ya mbóngo.	The wedding ring is made out of silver.
Lopété ya bolóngani ezalí ya wólo.	The wedding ring is made out of gold.
Zúzi apésí bangó ndíngisa ya koboma libála.	The judge gave them a divorce.
Zúzi apésí bangó nzelá ya koboma libála.	The judge gave them a divorce.
Azalí mokrístu ya mópe.	He is Catholic.
Azalí mokrístu ya mísyóni.	He is Protestant.
Azalí mokrístu ya ngelése.	He belongs to the Salvation Army.
Azalí mopagáno.	He is a pagan.
Nganga nkísí aákobíkisa motu ya maláli.	The medicine man heals people.
Nganga nkísí aákobengana badiábolo.	The medicine man chases away the evil spirits.
Nganga nkísí anókísí mbúla.	The medicine man made it rain.
Tómbólá mosíkitéle.	Put up the mosquito netting.
Kángáká mosíkitéle.	Always keep the mosquito netting closed.
Nabótámí na Zavié.	I was born in January.
Nabótámí na Fevlié.	I was born in February.
Nabótámí na Málasi.	I was born in March.
Nabótámí na Apríli.	I was born in April.
Nabótámí na Máí.	I was born in May

Nabótámí na Yúni.	I was born in June.
Nabótámí na Yúli.	I was born in July.
Nabótámí na Áugusti.	I was born in August.
Nabótámí na Setémbe.	I was born in September.
Nabótámí na Okotóbe.	I was born in October.
Nabótámí na Novémbe.	I was born in November.
Nabótámí na Desémbe.	I was born in December.
mamé̄lo (ma mère)	nun
-sám̄ba	to plead
-sám̄bela	to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services
esám̄bo, bi-	prayer
sutáni (soutane)	cloth (clergy); cassock
-bálisa	to marry, give in marriage, perform a marriage ceremony
pasté̄lé (pasteur)	minister, clergyman (Protestant)
maliási (mariage)	marriage
bolóngani, bolongáni, ma-	marriage (Christian rite); married person
wólo	gold
zúzi, zúze (juge)	judge; court, tribunal
libála, ma-	marriage (traditional)
mokrístu, monkrístu, ba-	Christian
mísyóni (mission)	missionary, clergyman (Protestant)

ngɛlɛ́sa	Protestant, Salvation Army
mopagáno, ba-	pagan
nganga, ba-	a specialist, master of trade; native doctor; one who con- ducts religious services
-benga	to follow, hunt, chase, pursue; approach, go to; to be on the point of
diábolo, ba-	devil, evil spirit
mosikitɛ́lɛ, mi-	mosquito netting
(moustiquaire)	

NOTES

23.1 Suggestive Cohortative

Sókó toléí mabé?

/sókó/ and the immediate past mark a suggestive cohortative, which usually translates, 'Suppose...', e.g., /Sókó toléí mabé?'/, 'Suppose we eat, that'd be all right, wouldn't it?'

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Mwána akeí wápi? | Where has the child gone? |
| 2. Mwána akeí <u>kotéya na etéyelo.</u> | The boy has gone to teach at the school. |
| 3. <u>Molakisi aákotéya na etéyelo.</u> | The instructor is teaching the school. |
| 4. Molakisi <u>aákolóngana leló na Ndáko-Nzámbé.</u> | The instructor is getting married at the church today. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 5. <u>Baníngá</u> baákolóngana lẹlọ́
na Ndáko-Nzámbé. | My friends are getting
married at the church today. |
| 6. Baníngá <u>bakozónḡa na ntángu</u>
<u>malámu.</u> | My friends won't get back
too late. |
| 7. <u>Tatá</u> akozónḡa na ntángu
malámu. | My father will get back
fairly early. |
| 8. Tatá <u>akokẹndẹ kobína na</u>
<u>ndáko ya Michel.</u> | My father is going to dance
at Michel's. |
| 9. <u>Balónganı</u> bakokẹndẹ kobína
na ndáko ya Michel. | The married couple(s) will
dance at Michel's house. |
| 10. Balónganı <u>bazónḡí ó mbóka.</u> | The husband and wife went
to their village. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nasómbélí ndáko lifungóla
ya síka. | I bought a new key for the
house. |
| 2. Nasómbélí <u>babını masanga.</u> | I bought the dancers some
drinks. |
| 3. <u>Tozalı kopésa</u> babını masanga. | We are giving the dancers
some drinks. |
| 4. Tozalı kopésa <u>balónganı</u>
<u>bosálısı.</u> | We are giving the couple
assistance. |
| 5. Tozalı <u>kosénga lifúta na</u>
<u>basómbı.</u> | We are asking the purchasers
for payment. |
| 6. <u>Toutí</u> kosénga lifúta na
basómbı. | We have just asked the
purchasers for payment. |
| 7. Toutí <u>kopésa yé liyébısa.</u> | We have come to give him a
notice. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. <u>Motóngi</u> ya ndáko azalí kopésa yé liyébisa. | The contractor is going to give him the notice. |
| 9. Motóngi ya ndáko <u>azalí na ebúteli</u> ya mabáyá. | The builder has a wooden ladder. |
| 10. <u>Mobomi azaláki na ebúteli</u> ya mabáyá. | The assassin had a wooden ladder. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Akozala kotómbala mosikitéle likoló libosó ya kolála. | He'll put up the mosquito netting before going to sleep. |
| 2. <u>Tokangáká</u> mosikitéle likoló libosó ya kolála. | We closed the mosquito netting before going to bed. |
| 3. Tokangáká <u>mabóko ntángu azwáká likámá</u> . | We crossed our arms when he had an accident. (i.e., we did not give him any assistance.) |
| 4. <u>Bangó míbalé bamipésánáká mabóko ntángu azwáká likámá</u> . | He aided the person ('they mutually gave hands') who had an accident. |
| 5. Bangó míbalé bamipésánáká <u>monoko libosó bakabwáná</u> . | They promised to write to each other after they separated. |
| 6. <u>Tatá apésáká ngái monoko</u> libosó tokabwáná. | My father gave me some advice before we separated. |
| 7. Tatá apésáká ngái <u>mwási</u> ya kobála. | My father obtained a wife for me. |
| 8. <u>Atá ndéle nakozwa</u> mwási ya mobála. | I will get married sooner or later. |
| 9. Atá ndéle nakozwa <u>bokonzi na mbóka na bisú</u> . | Sooner or later I'll have the power in our country. |
| 10. <u>Ndé yó mokonzi</u> na mbóka na bisú? | Are you the chief of state of our country? |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nakomí chec. | I wrote a check. |
| 2. <u>Natóndísí</u> chec. | I filled out a check. |
| 3. <u>Natíndélí yé</u> chec. | I sent him a check. |
| 4. Natíndí <u>yé na bánkí</u> . | I sent him to the bank. |
| 5. Natíndí <u>chec na bánkí</u> . | I sent the check to the bank. |
| 6. <u>Nazalí na mbóngo</u> na bánkí. | I have money in the bank. |
| | I deposited money in the bank. |
| 7. <u>Nazwí mbóngo</u> na bánkí. | I withdrew money from the bank. |
| 8. <u>Naséngí</u> mbóngo na bánkí. | I withdrew money from the bank. |
| 9. <u>Nakeí kozwá</u> mbóngo na bánkí. | I'm going to the bank to get
some money. |
| 10. Nakeí <u>kodéfa</u> mbóngo na
bánkí. | I'm going to the bank to
borrow some money. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Efelo ya ndáko ebúkání. | The wall of the house collapsed. |
| 2. Efelo ya ndáko <u>ezalí</u>
<u>motánésó</u> . | The wall of the house is yellow. |
| 3. <u>Elambá na yé ya maliási</u>
ezalí motánésó. | Her wedding gown is light
yellow. |
| 4. Elambá na yé ya <u>bolónganı</u>
ezalí motánésó. | Her wedding gown is light
yellow. |
| 5. Elambá na yé ya bolónganı
<u>eútí na Mpútú</u> . | Her wedding gown came from
Europe. |

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 6. <u>Lopété na yé ya bolóngani</u>
eúti na Mpútú. | Her wedding ring came from
Europe. |
| 7. <u>Lopété na yé ya bolóngani</u>
<u>ezalí ya wólo.</u> | Her wedding ring is gold. |
| 8. <u>Ntángu na yé ya mabóko</u>
ezalí ya wólo. | His wristwatch is gold. |
| 9. <u>Ntángu na yé ya mabókɔ</u>
<u>ekufí.</u> | His wristwatch is broken. |
| 10. <u>Ntángu na yé ya ndáko</u>
ekufí. | His alarm clock is broken. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Mokandá ezaláki líkoló ya
búuku óyo ezaláki líkoló
ya mésa. | The letter was on the book on
the table. |
| 2. <u>Natíyí yangó</u> líkoló ya
búuku óyo ezaláki
líkoló ya mésa. | I put it on the book on the
table. |
| 3. Natíyí yangó <u>epái otikáki.</u> | I put it where you left it. |
| 4. <u>Nazwáki ekomeli</u> epái otikáki. | I found the pen where you
left it. |
| 5. Nazwáki ekomeli <u>líkoló ya</u>
<u>mésa na eténi ya kolía.</u> | I found the pencil on the table
in the dining room. |
| 6. <u>Tiyéla ngái mpondú na lóso</u>
líkoló ya mésa na eténi
ya kolía. | Put me some rice with manioc
leaves on the table in the
dining room. |
| 7. <u>Tiyéla ngái mpondú na lóso</u>
<u>balámbi na pilípili ná</u>
<u>mafúta motané.</u> | Put me out some rice with manioc
leaves cooked with peppers
and palm oil. |

8. Pésá ngáí bilókọ balámbí
na pílpíli ná mafúta
motáné. Give me something cooked with
peppers and palm oil.
9. Pésá ngáí bilókọ otíkákí
lóbí na mpókwa. Give me some of the food that
you had left yesterday
afternoon.
10. Lakísá yé ekótí otíkákí
lóbí na mpókwa. Show her the hat that you
left yesterday afternoon.

23.2. Distant Indefinite Future

Atá ndéle nakozwa mwási ya kobála.

/atá ndéle/, 'even sometime', is used to refer to something that is hoped or wished for but which is way off in the future if at all, as in the example above, 'I'll get married one of these days.'

Unit 24

Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Bozalí na bileko bóní na mbúla mókó? How many seasons do you have per year?

-B-

2. Míbalé, mókó ya mbúla, mosúsu ya elanga. Two, one rainy and the other dry.

-A-

3. Eleko ya elanga ezalí ntángu níni? When is the dry season?

-B-

4. Ebandaka na sánzá ya mókó tíi na sánzá ya motóbá. It lasts from January to June.

-A-

5. Óyo ya mbúla? And the rainy season?

-B-

6. Elanga ya mbúla ekámátí sánzá ya motóbá, tíi na óyo ya zómi na míbalé. The rainy season lasts the other six months from June until December.

-A-

7. Lobéla ngái mwáa makambo elekaka ntángu wána. Tell me something about time.

-B-

8. Ntángu ya mbúla makámá
mapusí míngí, mpámba
te mbúla ekonókò míngí
mpé makásí.

During the rainy season there
are a lot of natural calam-
ities because it rains a lot
and very hard.

-A-

nkáké, n-

thunder, lightning

9. Bozalí na nkáké tẹ na
mbóka na bínú?

Don't you have a lot of thunder?

-B-

10. Tozalí na nkáké míngí
mpé makásí lokóla.

We have a lot of thunder, and
it's quite loud.

-A-

11. Ntángu ya mbúla batu
basálaka toó babimaka
libándá tẹ?

During the rain people don't
work or go outside?

-B-

-zinda

to sink, drown, flood

12. Mpó na níní tẹ, batu
babimaka lokóla ntángu
nyónsò, káka ndé bandáko
mosúsu ya kalakala na
banzelá mosúsu ya mikémiké
bibúkanaka toó bizindaka.

Why not? People usually go
out, only there are some
old houses and small roads
that are cut off or submerged
under water.

-A-

13. Ndéngé níní okokí koyéba
sókò mbúla elíngí konókà?

How can you know if it's going
to rain?

-B-

14. Ezalí mpási tɛ́, okomóna
likoló ekómí moíndu,
mpé mbóka molíli, na
ntángu wáná, batu ná
nyama bakómí kolúka
ndáko na bangó.
- It's not difficult. You will
see the sky become black and
the village gets dark, men
and animals start looking
for shelter.

USEFUL PHRASES

- Eleko ya mpela ezalí malámu
na kolóbɔ́.
- Eleko ya mpela ekokólisa
bilóna mbángumbángu.
- Eleko ya mpela ekoúmelaka
sánzá mínei toó mítánu.
- Mabelé ya zélo ebɔ́ngí na
mbuma tɛ́.
- Mabelé ya zélo ebɔ́ngí na
ndúnda tɛ́.
- Mabelé ya zélo ebɔ́ngí na
bilóna tɛ́.
- Mpáu, mpó na kobóngola mabelé.
- Líkwangola, mpó na kíkáta
nzeté ya miké.
- Nkóngo, mpó na kokata matíti
mpé kotímola mabúlú.
- Akónaka masángú.
- Akónaka kɔ́kɔ́tí.
- The rainy season is good for
fishing.
- The rainy season makes plants
grow very fast.
- The rainy season lasts four
or five months.
- Sandy soil isn't suitable for
fruits.
- Sandy soil isn't suitable for
vegetables.
- Sandy soil isn't suitable for
plants.
- A spade is for turning over
earth.
- A machete is for cutting small
trees.
- A hoe is for cutting weeds and
digging wells.
- He raises corn.
- He raises coconuts.

Akónaka mángolo.	He raises mangoes.
Atímólí tomáto.	He hoed the tomatoes.
Atímólí ngúba.	He hoed the peanuts.
Atímólí libélá na nkóngo.	He dug a trench with a hoe.
Akèngelaka bíbwélé.	He raises animals.
Abòkòlaka nyama.	He raises animals.
Abòkòlaka ngómbe.	He keeps cows.
Abòkòlaka ntaba.	He keeps goats.
Abòkòlaka memé.	He keeps sheep.
Abòkòlaka mpatá.	He keeps sheep.
Mbóka ezindí na máí.	The village is flooded.
Mwána azindí na máí.	The child drowned.
Masúwa mazindí na máí.	The boat sank.
lisángú, lisángo, ma-	a grain of corn
kòkòtí	coconut, coconut palm
língolo, ma-	mango, mango tree
ngúba, n-	peanuts
libélá, ma-	pit, hole, trench, well, valley
ewélé, b-	small domestic animal, sheep, goat
ngómbe, n-	cow, bull
ntaba, n-	goat
mpatá, m-	sheep
mpela, m-	rain, rainy season, flood
-lóbò	to fish
-lóna	to plant, sow

bilóna	plant, planting
zélɔ	sand
ndúnda, n-	vegetables
líkwangola, ma-	machete, chopping-knife; part of a village where ex-soldiers live
nkóngo, n-	hoe, pick-ox
-kóna	to plant, sow

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Bozali na bileko bóni
na mbúla mókó? How many seasons do you have
in a year?
2. Tozali na bileko míbalé
na mbúla mókó. We have two seasons in year.
3. Tozali na basángá zómi
na míbalé na mbúla mókó. We have twelve months in a
year.
4. Tozali na basánzá zómi na
míbalé mpó na eleko ya
mbúla na eleko ya elanga. We have twelve months during
the dry season and wet season.
5. Lobéla ngái mwáa makambo mpó
na eleko ya mbúla na eleko
ya elanga. Tell me something about the wet
and dry seasons.
6. Lobéla ngái mwáa makambo
elekaka na ntángu wána. Tell me something about that
time.
7. Na ntángu wána makamá
mapusí míngi. During that time, there are a
lot of natural calamities.
8. Makamá mapusí míngi mpámba
te mbúla ekonóko míngi
mpé makási. There are a lot of natural
calamities because it rains
long and hard.

9. Tozali na nkaké mingi,
mpamba te mbúla ekonókò
mingi mpé makási. We have a lot of thunder and
lightning when it rains
hard for a long time.
10. Tozali na nkaké mingi na
mbóka na bisú. We have a lot of thunder and
lightning in our country.

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ntángu ya mbúla batu During the rain, people don't
basalaka toó babimaka work or go outside?
libándá tẹ?
2. Mpó na níni tẹ, batu Why don't people work or go
basalaka mpé babimaka outside?
libándá?
3. Mpó na níni tẹ, tozali
na nkaké mingi mpé
makási. Why not, we have a lot of very
loud thunder.
4. Tozali na nkaké mingi mpé We have a lot of very loud
makási, kási ntángu ya
elanga tẹ. thunder, but not in the
dry season.
5. Bilókò ya kolía bızalı
mingi ntángu ya mbúla,
kási ntángu ya elanga tẹ. There are lots of things to
eat in the rainy season, but
not in the dry season.
6. Bilókò ya kolía bızalı There are many things to eat
mingi ntángu ya mbúla, in the rainy season because
mpó mái ezalı mingi na
mabelé. there is a lot of water in
the ground.
7. Mpó mái ezalı mingi na Because there is lots of water
mabelé bambuma bikokóla
malámu. in the ground, fruits grow
very well.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 8. Bambuma bikokóla malámu
<u>sókó mabelé ezalí malámu.</u> | Fruits grow well if the soil
is good. |
| 9. Sókó mabelé ezalí malámu
<u>bilóna bikokóla mbángu.</u> | If the soil is good, plants
grow rapidly. |
| 10. Bilóna bikokóla mbángu
<u>na ntángu ya mbúla.</u> | Plants grow rapidly in the
rainy season. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Lóbi mọkọlọ níní? | What day is tomorrow? |
| 2. Lóbi mọkọlọ ya mosálá
<u>mitánu.</u> | Tomorrow is Friday. |
| 3. <u>Nakosála</u> té mọkọlọ ya
mosálá mitánu. | I won't work Friday. |
| 4. Nakosála té <u>na ntóngó mpé</u>
<u>na mpókwa.</u> | I won't work either the morning
or the afternoon. |
| 5. <u>Akëndéki</u> na Stade Baudoin
té na ntóngó mpé na
mpókwa. | He didn't go to the Stade Baudoin
either in the morning or in
the afternoon. |
| 6. Akëndéki na Stade Baudoin
té <u>lóbí na ntóngó.</u> | He didn't go to the Stade
Baudoin yesterday morning. |
| 7. <u>Okoyáa</u> lóbí na ntóngó. | You will come tomorrow morning. |
| 8. Okoyáa lóbí <u>na masanga.</u> | You will come tomorrow with the
drinks. |
| 9. <u>Lobéla yé áyáa</u> na masanga
lóbí. | Tell him to bring some drinks
tomorrow. |
| 10. Lobéla yé áyáa <u>na bána</u>
<u>léló.</u> | Tell him to bring the children
today. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nakeí kosála na Kinsásá. | I'm about to go to work in Leopoldville. |
| 2. Nakeí <u>kotánga búuku na ndáko.</u> | I'm about ready to read a book at home. |
| 3. <u>Nakosála bilanga na nsima na ndáko.</u> | I'll cultivate the fields behind the house. |
| 4. Nakosála bilanga na nsima <u>ya elanga.</u> | I'll work the fields after the dry season. |
| 5. <u>Balóni bakokéba na ntángu ya elanga.</u> | The cultivators are attentive during the dry season. |
| 6. Balóni bakokéba na ntángu <u>bakotímola mabelé.</u> | The cultivators pay attention when they are spading up the ground. |
| 7. Bakotímola mabelé <u>na nkóngo ná mpáu.</u> | They turn up the earth with hoes and spades. |
| 8. <u>Áakobóngola mabelé na nkóngo ná mpáu.</u> | They are turning over the ground with hoes and shovels. |
| 9. Áakobóngola mabelé <u>na ya nsúka ya elanga.</u> | They dig up the ground in the last month of the dry season. |
| 10. <u>Ebóngi malámu ólóna na sánzá ya nsúka ya elanga.</u> | It's best to cultivate in the last month of the dry season. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Mabelé ya mái eékokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu. | Wet earth makes plants grow very fast. |
| 2. <u>Eleko ya mbúla</u> eékokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu. | The rainy season makes plants grow very fast. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Eleko ya mbúla <u>ekoúmelaka</u>
<u>sánzá mínei toó mítánu.</u> | The rainy season lasts four or
five months. |
| 4. Eleko ya mpela <u>ekoúmelaka</u>
<u>sánzá mínei toó mítánu.</u> | The rainy season lasts four or
five months. |
| 5. Eleko ya mpela <u>ezalí malámu</u>
<u>na kolóbo.</u> | The rainy season is good for
fishing. |
| 6. <u>Bwátu</u> ezalí malámu na
kolóbo. | A dugout canoe is good for
fishing. |
| 7. Bwátu <u>esálamaka na mabáyá</u>
<u>makási.</u> | A dugout is (always) made of
durable wood. |
| 8. <u>Ndáko ya bisú</u> esálamaka
na mabáyá makási. | Our house is built with strong
timbers. |
| 9. Ndáko na bisú <u>ekabwání</u>
<u>na biténi mínei.</u> | Our house consists of four
rooms. |
| 10. Ndáko na bisú <u>etóngámáká</u>
<u>libosó ya etumba.</u> | Our house was built before the
war. |

GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Bána batíkí maloba na
ngái makeí mpámba. | The children pay no attention
to my words. |
| 2. Bána batíkí <u>ndembó na</u>
<u>libándá ya kosana.</u> | The children left the ball on
the playground. |
| 3. <u>Na mpókwa bakobéte</u> ndembó
na libándá ya kosana. | This afternoon there will be
a soccer game at the field. |
| 4. Na mpókwa <u>tokokende epái.</u> | This afternoon we will go
somewhere. |
| 5. <u>Balóngani</u> bakokende epái. | The couple will go somewhere. |
| 6. Balóngani <u>balátákí bilambá</u>
<u>ya sika.</u> | The couple wore new clothes. |

7. Lóbi bamónáki bangó balátáki
bilambá ya sika. Yesterday they appeared
wearing new clothes.
8. Lóbi bamónáki bangó ntángu
baútáki na Ndáko-Nzámbe. Yesterday they were seen
leaving the church.
9. Totíndéláki mwási na mobáli
mbóté ntángu baútáki na
Ndáko-Nzámbe. We said hello to the woman
and man as they were leaving
the church.
10. Totíndéláki mwási na mobáli
mbóté nsima ya bolóngani
na bangó. We said hello to the woman and
man after their marriage.

GLOSSARY

This vocabulary is alphabetized according to the stem consonant and not according to the prefixes, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', is alphabetized under 'a'.

a

mwáa	small, little, few
ái	oh, hey
aló (allô)	hello
'ambassade'	embassy
mwambe, mwambi	eight
mwána, °bána	child
bomwána, (ma-)	childhood
'Anglais'	English
Angelé (anglais)	English
aré (arrêt)	stop
aré ya otobísi	bus stop
mwási, °bási	woman, female, left (opp. right)
atá, atáa	even, even if, although
atá ndéle	much later
bwátu, °mátu	dugout canoe, native boat
avási (avance)	advance, part payment, deposit
avió (avion)	airplane, airmail

b

-bakisa	to add
-bála	to marry (traditional marriage)

BASIC COURSE

libála, ma-	marriage (traditional native)
mbala, m-	time, times, often mostly
mbálá, m-	potato
balabála, °balabála	street, (broad) road
-bálana	to marry, get married, marry each other (traditional marriage)
balasáni, °balasáni	veranda, porch; hat brim
ebale, b1-	stream, river
míbalé	two
mobáli, m1-	man, male; right (opp. left)
-balisa	to marry, give in marriage, perform a marriage ceremony
-banda	to start, commence
bandá	from, since, beginning, start- ing, continuing/starting from
-bandaka	to begin regularly, to last, continue
libándá	outside; yard, field
mbanda, ba-	co-wife; brother-in-law married to wife's sister; sister-in-law married to husband's brother; people who don't like each other
ebandeli, b1-	beginning
bobandi, (ma-)	beginning, start
libángá, ma-	rock, stone
mobangé, m1-	elder, old man/woman, age

LINGALA

mbángu, mbángo, m-	speed, swiftness
bánkɪ (banque)	bank
libáyá, ma-	wood, board, bench, seat; aim, target; blouse
mabé	bad, wicked, ugly
mbe	then, otherwise, else; perhaps; introduces main clause of conditional sentence
-beka	to borrow, buy on credit, ask for the loan of
-bekisa	to lend, give as a loan, pay in advance, sell on credit
mobéko, mɪ-	law, regulation, obligation, duty
libéla, ma-	pit, hole, trench; well; valley
-béle	to hurt, suffer, be sick
mabelé	ground, earth, floor
mbele	then; perhaps; else, otherwise introducing main clause of hypothetical supposition
mbeli, m-	knife
-bémba	to travel
mobémbo, mɪ-	trip, journey
-bénda	to draw/pull/move in, out, up, off, over
ebendé, bɪ-	piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
libendé, ma-	rod, post, pole; tamper, tamping stick

BASIC COURSE

-béndisa	to help pull/move
-benga	to follow, hunt, chase, pursue; approach, go to; to be on the point of
-bénga	to call, summon; call, name, order (merchandise)
-bengana	to drive away, pursue
'besoin'	need
-bétɛ, -béta	to hit, strike, knock, beat
ebétɛlɪ, bɪ-	hammer, tool for hitting
mbétu, mbéto, m-	bed, pallet
-bíka	to recover, lived, be rescued
mbíla, m-	palm nut, palm tree
-bima	to go out, come out, go for a walk, emerge
-bimaka	to go/come out regularly
mobimba, (mɪ-)	entire, whole
-bimisa	to have (something) come/go out
-bimisela	to have (something come/go out for someone)
-bína	to dance
bobína, ma-	a dance
mobínɪ, mɪ-	dancer
mbísɪ, m-	fish
bóɪ, (ba-)	houseboy, servant

LINGALA

mbóka, m-	village, region, district; tribe, race; residence, address
libóké, ma-	bunch, group, crowd; pack, package; swarm
lobókó, ma-	arm, sleeve, side, hand
mòbókólí, ba-	raiser, one who cares for/raises children/animals
-bókólóló	to bring up, raise, rear, feed, breed (animals)
bolangítí, bolangísí	blanket
-bolosé (brosser)	to brush
bolósí (brosse)	brush
-boma	to kill, murder, slaughter; hunt catch; damage badly, destroy, extinguish, efface, erase, wipe (off); abolish, eliminate, do away with
-bomba	to hide, keep, store, preserve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)
ebómbelí, bí-	place/rack/cabinet for storage; dresser, bookcase, china-cabinet
mobomí, mí-	killer, murderer, assassin, butcher
-bongísa	to put in order, prepare, repair, arrange, dress up
-bongísama	to be repaired (by someone)
-bongísela	to repair or prepare for someone

BASIC COURSE

mobongisi, ba-	repairer
mobongisi ya mótuka	mechanic
-bongo, -bonga	to be suitable, be in order, fit, be fitting
libóngó, ma-	shore, quay, wharf, dock
mbongo, m-	money; silver
-bóngola	to change, turn around; stir; interpret, translate; dis- place, remove, shift
-bósana	to forget, be mistaken, make a mistake
libosó, ma-	front; before, in front of; first, last, fartherest
-bóta	to give birth to, bear, produce
libóta, libótá, ma-	family, household, descent
mbótama, m-	birth
mbóté	greetings, good morning/after noon/evening
mobóti, ba-	parent
bobótisi, (ma-)	obstetrics, midwifery
mobótisi, ba-	midwife
-botoḷo	to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound; pillage
'bourgmestre'	mayor
'bourse d'études'	scholarship
-bóya	to refuse, reject, not want, despise; abandon, leave for good

LINGALA

-búka	to break, demolish, pick, gather; conquer; change direction
-búkana	to be broken; gather, assemble, be equally strong
mbúla, m-	rain, rainy season; year
bulé (bleu)	blue
libúlú, ma-	well, pit, toilet
mbuma, m-	fruit, sore, boil; grain, seed; change, coins
libumu, ma-	stomach, belly, womb
-buna, -bunda	to fight, wage war; wrestle, struggle
-búnga	to forget, make a mistake, be wrong; lose; get lost; lose one's way; die
-búngisela	to lose
'bureau'	office
bús	bus (see otobísí)
-buta	to rise, ascend, climb (up), creep (up), go up, increase
ebúteli, b1-	ladder, stairs; top, summit
-bútisela	to send something (back) to someone
butó (bouton)	button
butú, °mutú	night
búuku, (ba-)	book
mbwá, m-	dog

-bwáka	to throw, reject, renounce; throw out, disown
ebwéǵé, b1-	small domestic animal, sheep, goat
<u>c</u>	
'chec'	check
'chutes'	rapids
'cravate'	necktie
<u>d</u>	
ndáko, n-	house, building, room, shed, wall
Ndáko-Nzámbé	church
ndámbo, n-	part, piece, share, half
nde	then, introduces main clauses in conditional sentence
ndé	only, however, although, inspite of the fact that; a future marker in literary Lingala (Do <u>not</u> use as a future marker)
-défa	to borrow, buy on credit, ask for the loan of
-défisa	to lend, give as a loan, pay in advance, sell on credit
ndéǵé, n-	sometime, in the future
atá ndéǵé	much later
mondéǵé, m1-	white man, European
ndembó, n-	rubber; ball

ndéngé, n-	sort, kind, manner, way, quality
ndéngé na ndéngé	all kinds of
ndéngé níni	how
madẹ́su	beans
díi	comrade, friend
midí	noon (11-1)
diábolo, ba-	devil, evil spirit
ndínga, n-	language
ndingisa, n-, (See--lingisa)	consent, permission, authority, authorization
ndọ́bɔ̣, n-	fishing, fish hook
bondókí, ma-	gun, rifle
ndúnda, n	vegetables
dzeké	steamshovel; front-end loader; earth mover; dump truck

e

ẹ́ẹ́ (sometimes ingressive)	yes; oh
'election'	election
essẹ́nce	gasoline

f

falánga, falánka (franc)	franc
-fánda, -fwánda	to sit, be seated, live, reside
efándelí, bí-	seat, chair
-fándisa	to cause to sit, have sit

efelo, b1-	wall
fiéfélé, févélé (fièvre)	fever
físi (fiche)	form, blank
fotó (photo)	photograph, picture
Français (also Falansé)	French
frigó (frigo)	refrigerator, cold storage room
-fúnga	to shut, close; take grasp; button
-fúngola	to open, release, unlock, unbutton
lifungóla, ma-	key
lifúngú, ma-	button
-fungwamaka	to be opened
-fúta	to pay; a tone, make up for
lifúta, ma-	pay, payment, salary
mafúta	oil, fat, grease
mofúteli, ba-	payer, tenant, renter
-fwánda	(See -fánda)
-fwándisa	(See -fándisa)

g

ngai	sour(ness)
ngái	I, me, my, mine
ngái (emphatic subject)	
Lingála	the Lingala language
mónganga, mí-	physician, European doctor
'gare'	station

LINGALA

'gaz'	gas
magazíni (magasin)	store, shop; depot, storage place
gbagba, °gbagba	bridge
'gendarme'	policeman
-ngenge	to shine, blaze, gleam
-ngenisá	to cause to shine, blaze, gleam
míngi	much, many
bangó	they, them
bóongó	thus, so
yangó	they (impersonal)
ngóla, n-	ngola tree; reddish powder made from its bark; red, purple, violet
língolo, ma-	mango
ngómbá, n-	mountain, hill
ngómbé, n-	cow, bull
-ngomela	to iron for someone
-ngomelísela	to have something ironed for someone
ngonga, n-	time, hour, bell, gong; clock
'goudron'	tar
'gouvernement'	government
ngúba, n-	peanut(s)
-gumba	to fold, bend; stoop
-gumbama	to be bent/folded/stooped
mongungi, monkungi, n-	mosquito

BASIC COURSE

ngúyá strength, power; ability,
quality

móngwa, m1- salt

l

má1 water; sap, juice

má1-má1 liquid

mó1 sun, sunlight, daylight, day,
the heat of the sun

ífo (il faut) it is necessary, to have to

naínu still, yet

k

kaba to give, state; divide, share;
betray

kabínda, ba- carpenter, cabinetmaker

kabiné (cabinet) toilet; excrement

-kabola to hand out, distribute
divide up, separate

-kalwana to be separated/divided/dis-
tributed

nká1, n- paddle, oar

káka only

nkáké, n- thunder, lightning

kala formerly, earlier, old

kalesó (caleçon) shorts, underwear

-kálinga, -kálanga to roast, bake; fry

LINGALA

likámá, ma-	danger, accident, natural calamity; punishment, retribution
nkámá, monkámá	hundred
-kamata	to take, receive, accept
likambo, ma-	difference, matter, case, dispute, affair
kamió (camion)	truck
kana	then, otherwise
-kána	to resolve, intend, threaten, promise
mokandá, m1-	letter, paper, document
-kanga	to wrap up, package; stop, cease, close, shut; take, grasp
-kangama	to be stopped, tied, captured, congealed
ekangeli, b1-	handle; band; devide for turning
-kangema	to be closed
bokangi, (ma-)	a stop, stopping
-kangwama	to be opened
-kangisa	to stop, cause to stop; join fasten, screw tight; detain
-kangola	to release, let go of, loose, open unroll, unlock, unfasten
-kangolela	to open for someone
-kangwa	to be open, be unlocked
-kanisa	to think, reflect

likánisí, ma-	thought, opinion, intention
kánya, nkánya, (n-)	fork, pitch fork, rake
kásí	but, on the contrary
makásí	very, much, strong, hard
-káta	to cut, chop
-míkata	to cut oneself
-kátana	to cut each other; get cut; stop
kátí	in, inside (of), in the middle of, among; center, middle, inside
katikátí	in between, in the middle/center of
-katísa	cause/have cut; cross; interrupt, change direction, go through bend, curve
-kauka, -kaoka	to be(come) dry
-kaukísa	to dry, cause to dry
káwa	coffee
likáyá, ma-	tobacco, cigarette, cigar
kazáka	coat, jacket, vest
moké, m1-	small, thin; smallness
-kéba	to pay attention, be attentive
likeí, ma-	egg
bokeí, (ma-)	departure, starting, separation discrimination, distinction
nkékéle, n-	cane, reed, liana, wickerwork

ekeko, b1-	picture, sculpture, statue
kelási	class, classroom, school
lokelé, n-	spoon
makélele	quarrel, argument, sound of voices, noise
-kēde	to go, go away; die
-kēge	to take glances at, watch
-kēgele	to watch, guard, keep; raise animals
mokēgele, ba-	guard, keeper, protector, sentinel, overseer, warehouse- keeper
makíla	blood; fate, destiny
bokíla, ma-	hunt(ing)
mokíli, m1-	mainland, land; interior, inland; world
kíliyó, kílió (crayon)	pencil; legal charges, costs
bokíló, °bakíló	parent-in-law; brother/sister- in-law, good friend, acquaint- ances
nakínga, n-	bicycle
kiníni (quinine)	quinine
nkísi, n-	medicine, charm
-kita	to go/come down, descend; decrease, diminish
kíti	chair

BASIC COURSE

-kitisa	to cause to come down/descend; bring down, put down; take a person somewhere, drop off a person
kitókọ	beauty, beautiful, pretty, fine; delicious, clean, neat
Kitúba, Kutúba	the Kituba language
kó	indeed, certainly; come on
mókọ	one; certain, some
mokóbo, mi-	color, paint
-koka	to be able, can; be all present; be sufficient, enough
kóko, ba-	grandparent, grandchild
-kóla	to grow (up), increase
lokóla, n-	kind, sort, like, similar, such as
-kólisa	to cause to grow, bring up, raise, rear
ekólo, bi-	tribe (race), people of same place or language
nkóo, nkó, n-	intent, malice, purpose, will
kọkọti	coconut, coconut palm
likoló, ma-	sky, heaven; up, top, surface, above, over, on
lokolo, ma-	leg, foot paw; wheel, rim, tire
mọkọlọ, mi-	day
mokóló, ba-	grown person, adult
kólóngónu	health

monkɔlɔtɔ, mɪ-	line
-koma	to write, sign, inscribe, enroll
-kóma	to arrive, begin
-komama	to be written
-kómbama	to be swept/cleaned (by someone)
-kómbo, -kóm̄ba	to sweep, clean house; empty; wipe up/off; clean up/off
nkómbó, n-	name; honor, reputation
-komela	write to/for someone
ekomelɪ, bɪ-	writing instrument, writing, material, pencil, pen
ekomelɪ, bɪ-	pencil, pen, writing material
bokómi, (ma-)	arrival
mokomɪ, ba-	writer, author, scribe
-kómisa	to start, begin; cause to start/ begin
komisɛlɛ (commissaire)	commissioner, policeman
-kóna	to plant, sow
nkɔndɔkɔ, n-	cat
nkóngo, n-	hoe, pickax
mɔkɔngɔ, mɪ-	back
-konza	to manage, rule
mokonzi	chief, king, boss, supervisor
kɔpɔ	glass, tumbler, cup
-kɔta, kɔtɔ	to enter, go in
ekɔtɪ, bɪ-	hat (man's)

-kótisa	to cause to enter, insert, put in
nkóto	thousand
kovokasió (convocation)	notice, summons, traffic ticket
mokrístu, monkrístu, ba-	Christian
-kúfa	to die; wear out; be broken
kúku	kitchen; cook
-kulútu, ba-	older brother/sister
kúná	over there, yonder
-kunda	to bury; plant
monkungi; mongungi, n-	mosquito
mokúsé, m1-	short, small
-kúta	to meet, find, come upon
-kútana	to meet/find lack other
-kwá, -kwéya	to fall, fall down; take, get, obtain; cost
líkwangola, ma-	machete, chopping-knife; part of a village where ex-soldiers live
-kwéisa	to drop, throw down, cut/pull down, cause to fall, demolish, give judgment againsts in a lawsuit
-kwéya	to fall, be involved in/lose a lawsuit

1

bolái, (ma-)	length, depth, height
molaí, mi-	long, large, tall, deep, high
-laka	to give advice, set a time, promise; order
-lakisa	to show, display, teach, instruct
molakisi, ba-	teacher
-lála	to sleep, lie down, stay, remain
lilála, ma-	orange
maláli, maládi (maladie)	sickness, illness
-lálisa	to put to bed, put to sleep
-lámba	to cook, prepare food
elambá, bi-	cloth, material, piece of clothing
-lámbela	to cook or prepare food for someone
molámbi, ba-	cook
malámu	good, well, fine
-landa	to follow, pursue; prosecute, sue, look for; woo, court
elanga	field, garde; dry season; year, cultivating season
lángi, n-	color, paint
-láta	to dress, put on clothes
-látisa	to dress, cause to put on clothes
biléi	food(s), meal
boléi, (ma-)	meal

-léisa	to feed, cause/give to eat
-leka	to go by, pass by, surpass, excel
-lekaka	to go/pass by regularly; to happen, continue to happen
lékɪ, ba-	younger brother/sister
-lekɪsa	to have pass by, pass on; neglect; omit, miss
eleko, bɪ-	season, time, period
lɛlɔ́	today
-lɛmbɛ	to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done; (re)lax(ed), soft, moderate, abate
-lɛngɛlɛ	to prepare, get ready
elɛngɪ	pleasing to the senses; good taste/smell, beauty
letá (l'état)	government, state
Kikongo ya Letá	Kituba
-líá	to eat
libwá	nine
mílɪkɪ	milk
malíli	cold; shade, cool place
molíli	dark, obscure, darkness; ignorance
-límbisa	to forgive, pardon, excuse
bolímbísɪ, (ma-)	forgiveness, pardon
-linga	to want, like; be almost on the point of; love, be fond of

LINGALA

-lingana	to love/like each other; intertwine
-lingisa	to authorize, grant permission
bolingo, ma-	love, will
lísu, líso, ^o mísu, ^o míso	eye (in pl.) with eyes open; with good vision/taste; un- afraid
-loba	to speak, tell, say
-lobaloba	to talk a lot, discuss, argue, complain
-lobaloba	to chat, engage in small talk, complain, talk nonsense
-lobela	to speak to
molobelí, ba-	speaker, intercessor, lawyer
molobí, ba-	speaker, lecturer
-lóbɔ	to fish
elókɔ, bí-	thing, object
bolókɔ, ma-	jail, prison
-lɔkɔtɔ	to pick up, gather, collect
bololo	bitter(ness), sour(ness)
-lóna	to plant, sow
bílóna	plant, planting, that which has been planted
-lóngana	to marry, get married (Christian rite)
balónganí	married couple(s)
bolónganí, bolongání, ma-	marriage (Christian rite); married person

-longola, -longwa	to take away, remove, undress; wake up
bolongoli, (ma-)	removal, subtraction
lopitálo, ba-(hôpital)	hospital
lósò	rice
-luka	to hunt, search
-lúka	to row/paddle a boat
-lukela	to hunt for (something) for someone
molungé, mi-	warmth, heat; fever, sweat; stifling
lútu	spoon

m

ma	of, belonging to
má	Here! Take it!
maliási (mariage)	marriage
mamá, ba-	mother
lománde (amende)	fine, penalty
-mata	to go up, climb, rise
'mécancien'	mechanic
-meka	to measure, weigh, try (out), test
bomeki, (ma-)	attempt, effort, try
-mele	to drink, suck, smoke; take medicine
melesi (merci)	thanks
-melisa	to cause/give to drink

mamé̄lɔ, ba- (ma mère)	nun
-memē	to carry, transport
-memēlē	to carry for someone
momem̄ɪ, ba-	porter, carrier, bearer
mésa	table
méyá, loméyá	fifty-centime piece
lomingo	Sunday, week
-mónana	to be seen, appear; see each other; get seen
-mónɔ, -móna	to see, feel, observe
'Monsieur'	Mister, Sir, Gentleman
mwinda	light, lamp
mwindu, moindu, moindo, ba-	black, dark; a Negro, an African

n

na	in, of, by, with, and
ná	and, also, even, besides, in addition
míneɪ	four
moné̄nē, mɪ-	big, thick, wide, fat, tall
bóní	how much, how, many
nánɪ, ba-	who, which
nínɪ, ba-	what, which
moníngá, mɪ-	friend, companion, colleague, peer
-nó, -nókɔ	to rain
nókí	fast, quick, prompt, early

-nókɪsa	to make/cause to rain
-nókọ	(See -nọ)
nókó, ba-	uncle, mother's brother
mọnọkọ, mɪ-	mouth, opening; word, message
bínú	you (pl.)
línú, líno, ma-	tooth
numeró (numéro)	number

o

ó	to, toward, at, in, on, by
óo	oh!
otobísɪ (autobus)	bus

p

límpa, ma-	bread, piece of bread
mopagáno, ba-	pagan
epáí, bɪ-	side, part, direction
mpáku, mpáko, nɪ-	tax; corvee labor
paláki (plaque)	plate, plaque; auto licence plate
palató, ba-	errand boy, messenger postman
-palola	to skin, peel, scrape (off), scour (off)
mpám̄ba, m-	free, worthless, only, vain, without reason; nothing
lopángo, m-	enclosure, fence; plot of land; place of residence

-papola	to make thinner, shave off, remove an excess
'Parlementaire', ba-	member of Parliament
mpási, m-	pain, suffering illness
-pasola	to tear (off), cleave, split (off), saw, clear (away)
pastéleḽ (pasteur)	minister, clergyman (Protestant)
-pasuka	to be worn out
-paswa	to be split, torn; explode, split suddenly
mpatá, m-	sheep
mpáta, m-	five-franc piece
pataló (pantalon)	trousers, pants
mpáu, mpáo, m-	shovel, spade
mopaya, ba-	stranger; guest, visitor; host
mpé	and, also, even
mópe, mómpe, ba- (mon père)	priest (Catholic)
-pela	to be on fire, burn, be hit
mpela, m-	rain; rainy season; flood
-pelisa	to kindle, light; sharpen
mpéma, m-	breath
mpémbé	chalk, white; ivory
mpembéni, m-	side, edge; around, near, beside, along, next to
pḽḽḽḽḽ	near, close, by against
mpenzá, m-	only, alone, really, truly, completely

BASIC COURSE

mopepe, m1-	wind, air
-pésa	to give, provide with
-pésana	to give to each other
lopété, m-	ring; stripe, braid
mompíla, m1-	undershirt, tee shirt, vest, sweater
pilipíli	red pepper, pimento
mpió, m-	cold
piósi (pioche)	pick, pickafe
pitóló (petrole)	kerosene
mpó	thing, matter, affair; because, on account of
mpó na níni	why
mpókwa, m-	afternoon, (until 6 p.m.)
polísi (police)	policeman, police
-póló	to be(come) wet/soggy/rotten; be beaten, defeated
pómpi	pump, spray; filling station
mpóndú	manioc leaves (used as a vegetable)
mpóngí, m-	sleep
-póno, pona	to choose, select, elect, prefer
mpósá, m-	urge, desire
pósi (poche)	pocket, pouch, sack
pósita (poste)	post office, post service, mail box

LINGALA

mpóso, m-	week; ration; Saturday; weekend, salary, pay
'président'	president
'prise'	plug (electrical)
'pull-over'	sweater
-pupa	to blow, fan, window; shake; clean by blowing/shaking
-púpola, pupola	to blow/shake/clean off
-pusa	to surpass, exceed, be very, be too much
-púsa	to push, shove
púsupúsu (pousse-pousse)	push cart; baby carriage, stroller
lipúta, ma-	pagne, long wrap-around skirt
putulú	cinders, ashes, dust, powder

r

rádio, radió	radio
--------------	-------

s

sabóni (savon)	soap
mosai, monsaí, mosapi, mi-, n-	finger, toe
-sakana	to pay, enjoy oneself, have a good time
-sála	to do, work, perform, make, till the ground, farm
lisálá, ma-	field, cultivation; vegetable dish

BASIC COURSE

mosálá, m1-	job, work, trade, occupation
-sálama	to be done/made
-sálamaka	to be done/made habitually
esálalí, b1-	tool, instrument
-mísálelí	to make/do for oneself
mosálelí, ba-	servant
esálelo, b1-	workshop, workroom, place to work
mosáli, ba-	worker, employee
-sálisa	to help, take care of; employ, instruct
-sálisana	to help each other
lísálísí, bosálísí, ma-	help, aid, assistance
mosálísí, ba-	assistant, helper
-sámba	to plead
esámba, b1-	prayer
-sámBELA	to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services
nsambo	seven
-sana, -sakona	to play, amuse oneself
-sanga	to assemble, meet; mix
sandúku, (ba-)	trunk, box, suitcase, chest
masanga	wine, beer
nsango, n-	news, report
sáni, ba-	dish, bowl, plate, basin
mosani, ba-	player

LINGALA

lisano, lisanu, ma-	game
sánzá	month, moon; salary
sapáto, sapáta	shoe(s)
mosapí, mosai, mi-	finger, toe
mísátu, mísáto	three
'sciences économiques'	economics
se, te	that... (introduces subordinate clause)
nsé, n-	earth, world; bottom; down under, beneath
-seba	to sharpen, file, whet; draw palm wine
'secrétaire'	secretary
sémba	right, just, honest
-sémba	to extend, be right/upright
-sémbola	to put right, straighten up, make vertical
-sémbwa	to be right, just, sincere; be in an upright position, be straight
-séngé, -sénga	to ask for, beg; order (merchandise)
sika, sikáwa	now, just now, recently, immediately
esíká, bi-	place; where; when, while
mosíká, mi-	distance, distant, remote, far off

mosikítéle, m1- (moustiquarie)	mosquito netting
-síla	to finish, be done, finished, already
sílási (cirage)	polish, shoe polish
nsima, n- na nsima	back, rear, later, afterward then, next
-símba	to hold, seize
siméti (ciment)	cement
simísi (chemise)	shirt
sinemá (cinéma)	movies, cinema
singa	cord, rope, wire, cable; band, belt
masíni (machine)	machine, mechanical instrument; train
nyónso, bánsó	all, every, each
liso, ^o miso (see lísu)	
sodá, ba- (soldat)	soldier
sófélé, ba- (chauffeur)	driver, chauffeur
sókó, sókí	if, whether, about, perhaps
sokolá (chocolat)	brown, dark red
sokoto	uniform, military jacket/ clothing
-solola	to talk, converse, speak,
sóóló	true, real
mòsóló, m1-	money, wealth; dowry
-sóm̄ba	to buy, purchase, procure

-sóm̄bama	to be purchased
-sóm̄bela	to sell to someone
-mísóm̄bela	to buy for oneself
mosóm̄bɪ, ba-	purchaser, buyer
m̄os̄onɪ, ba-	seamstress, tailor
-s̄on̄o	to sew, make clothes
-sopa	to pour, spill, overturn, spread; talk nonsense
sosétɪ (chausette)	sock, stocking
nsóso, n-	chicken
bísú	we
lísu, líso, ^o mísu, ^o míso	eye; (in pl.) with eyes open, with good vision/taste; un- afraid
nsúka, n-	the end
nsúka ya mp̄os̄o	weekend
-súka	to end, finish; separate
sukáɪɪ (sucre)	sugar; candy; sweet
mosúkɪ, n-	hair
-sukola	to wash, clean, launder; to speak frankly to someone, tell someone off
-mísukola	to bathe, take a bath
-sukolela	to wash/clean for someone
-sukolelɪsa	to have something washed/cleaned for someone
-sukwama	to be/have been washed, mopped

sumé (essule-main)	towel, wash cloth
lisúsu	again, besides, else, moreover, yet
lisúsu té	no more, no longer
mosúsu, m1-	other, others, else
na ntángu mosúsu	occasionally, sometimes
sutáni (soutane)	cloth (clergy), cassock
masúwa, maswá	boat, ship
-swáa	to bite, sting
mísyóni (mission)	mission, missionary, clergyman (Protestant)
<u>t</u>	
ntaba, n-	goat
etabe, b1-	banana
matabís1 (matabiche)	matabiche, something extra given as an incentive to buy; tip, gratuity, advantage, profit
taksí (taxi)	taxicab
-tála	to look, look at, visit
talasé (terrasse)	ditch, canal
talatála	mirror, pane of glass; specta- cles, lamp chimney
botáli, (ma-)	view; viewing, contemplation
motáli, m1-	spectator, observer
-tálisa	to demonstrate, show
litálisi, ma-	show, demonstration, display

taliyé, talyé (atelier)	workshop, shop, workroom
ntálu, ntálo, n-	price, number
litambála, kitambála, ma-	handkerchief, cloth, towel,
	napkin
-támbola	to take a walk, travel, move,
	make progress, hurry
-támbolatambola	to walk a lot, a long way;
	wander
-tambwisa	to put in motion, start, drive
	(a car)
motámbwisi, ba-	one who sets in motion, one
	who spreads, steersman
motábwisi ya mótuka	driver, chauffeur
-tanda	to spread, stretch out
motáné	bright red/orange/yellow
motánéso	light yellow/tan/beige
-tánga	to read, count, enumerate, add up
ntángu, ntángo, n-	time, hour; clock; sun
mítáno, mítánu	five
tási (tasse)	cup
sáni ya tási	saucer
tatá, ba-	father
matánga	matánga, mourning, reception
	held at end of mourning and
	certain other special occa-
	sions
ntángu, ntángo, n-	time, hour; sun; clock
té // te//	not, no

BASIC COURSE

te //te//	that, so that, in order that
tée, tíí	until
motéí, motéyí, m1-	teacher, instructor
-tẹ́ka	to sell; betray; damage another's reputation
motéki, ba-	seller, trader
motékinyama, ba-	meatseller, butcher
-tẹ́kísa	to cause to sell; resell at a profit
tẹ́lẹ́fọ́n (telephone)	telephone
-tẹ́lẹ́mẹ	to stop, stand up; insist
ntembe, n-	discussion, argument; doubt, suspicion, hesitation
tẹ́mbẹ́lẹ́ (timbre)	postage-stamp
eténí, b1-	piece, part, share, room
-tẹ́ya	to teach, instruct
litéya, ma-	lesson
etéyelo, b1-	school
motéyí, motéí, m1-	teacher, instructor
'thermomètre'	thermometer
tíí	tea
tíí, téé	until, up to; (for) a long time, without interruption
-tíela, -tíyela, -tíla	to put for, put in for, pour for
-tíka	to leave, abandon, renounce, forsake, abstain from, cease; leave behind; deliver; let, permit

LINGALA

-tíkala	to stay, remain, stay behind
botíkí, (ma-)	resignation, abdication
-tíma	to dig, spade
-tímola	to dig up, spade over, turn over the soil
ntína, n-	root; basis, meaning, reason cause, significance, principle; because
ntína na, ntína ya	because of, on account of, therefore
-tínda	to order, command; send
-tíndama	to be sent, shipped
-tíndela	to send someone, order someone
litítí, ma-	blade of grass; hair, sheet of paper; weed, plant
-tíya	to put (in/on), set pour in place, load (up/on)
-tíyana	to put up with each other,
-tíyana ntembe	to discuss
-tíyela, -tíela	to put for, put in for, pour for
tíyó (tuyau)	pipe, tube, hose
moto (See motu)	
motó, mutú, motú, m1-	head; bunch
móto	fire, heat
toó	or
motóbá	six
-tóbóló	to pierce, puncture

-tóka	to draw water; dig out/up
-tókisa	to boil, be boiling, cause to boil
-tókọ	to boil, be boiling
tomáto	to mato
-tómbala	to pick up, lift, carry
-tónḁa	to be(come) full/filled; fill
-tónḁisa	to fill
-tónḁọ	to wish, hope, thank
-tonga	to bind, tie, join; twist, braid, plait, weave, sew; expand, enlarge
-tóngá	to build
-tóngama	to be built, be finished
motóngí, ba-	builder, contractor, mason
-tóngisa	to have built, cause to be built
ntóngó, n-	morning, afternoon
motu, moto, ba-	person, human, man
mutú (See motú)	
mótuka, m1-	automobile, truck, motor car
litúká, ma-	three stones used to cook on; cook stove
ntúkú, n-	ten
-tumba	to burn, set fire to, fry, roast over/in a fire
etumba, b1-	war, fight, battle, conflict
-tumbama	to be burned, fired

-túna	to ask, question
-mítúna	to wonder, ask oneself
motúna, m1-	a question
-túnama	to be questioned, interrogated
kitúnga, litúnga, ma-	basket with a lid
litungúlu, ma-	onion, leek
-túta	to strike, beat, mash, crush, bump (against)
motúya, m1-	value, price; number, arithmetic

u

-úmela	to remain, stay on, stay away
-umelaka	to last, continue to last
'université'	university
-úta	to come from
útá	from, since

v

'ville'	city, town; downtown; Kalina, the business and European section of Leopoldville
vínu	wine
víza (visa)	visa
'voiture'	automobile
- 'voter'	to vote

w

wa	of, at
áwa	here; since, as, while

BASIC COURSE

mwa	of, belonging
wána, wána	there, that, by/near you
wápi	where; (emphatic negative) not at all, nothing at all, not whether
wólo	gold

y

ya	of, belonging to
-yáa	to come, come to be, become
-nyákola	to scratch, mark
nyama, n-	animal, meat
monyámá, m-	net
-yangela	to manage, administrate, arrange
moyángeli, ba-	manager, director, administrator
yé, yeé	he, she, him, her, his, hers
boye	so, thus
-yéba	to know, know how to, be ac- quainted with; may, be allowed to
-yébana	to become known
-yébisa	to advise, inform, make known
liyébisa, ma-	notice, indication
-yékola	to study, learn
moyékoli, ba-	student
-yékwisa	to teach, instruct
moyékwisi, ba-	teacher, instructor

LINGALA

mayéle	intelligence, understanding, intellect, mind; shyness, craftiness, manner, means
-yémba	to sing
loyémbo, n-	song, singing
moyémbi, ba-	singer
eyenga, bi-	festival, feast day; Sunday, week
-yíba	to steal, take away
moyíbi, ba-	thief
-yibisa	to cause to steal, cause to be stolen
-yínda	to become dark/black/dirty
-míyíbisa	to cause to be one's possession, to be stolen
yó, yoó	you (sg.), your, yours
óyo	this, these, the
-yóka	to hear, listen; feel; understand
-yókama	to be heard (by someone)
-yókana	to hear (from) one another, understand each other, agree, live on good terms with
-nyókóló	to mistreat, torture, annoy, oppress
monyókólí, ba-	torturer, tyrant, slavedriver; weariness, bother, trouble
nyongo, n-	debt

Z

-zala	to be, exist, sit, live
-zala na	to have
-zala ya	to be made of, consist of
nzala, n-	hunger; famine
ezalalı, bı-	seat, chair, bench
bozalı, (ma-)	being, nature
ndéngé ya bozalı	character, personality
zámba, ^o mámba	woods, forest, jungle, interior, outside, country
Nzámbé	God
zándu, zándo	market, open produce market
-zánga	to be lacking, miss, be without, absent
linzanza, ma-	metal box, tin car; sheet of metal
nzelá	See nzilá
zélọ	sand
nzémbo, n-	song, singing
-zénga	to cut off, chop off
nzeté, n-	tree, stick, piece of wood, handle
nzilá, nzelá, n-	road, way, path, passage; admit- tance, permission; opening; means
-zıla	to wait, wait for
-zında	to sink; drown, flood, go under water

BASIC COURSE

-zoka	to be injured, be touched
-zokisa	to injure, wound
-mízokisa	to injure/wound oneself
nzoku, n-	elephant
zómi	ten
-zónga	to return, go/come back
-zóngisa	to send/give back; answer
nzótu, nzóto, n-	body
zulunálo (journal)	newspaper; magazine
zúzi, zúze (juge)	judge; court, tribunal
-zwá	to get, receive, find, meet
-zwáma	to be taken, received, found

PROPER NAMES

Alobé (Albert)	Albert
'Américain'	American
'Amérique'	America
Andelé (André)	Andrew
'Antoine'	Antoine
Áugustɪ (août?)	August
Bínza	Binza, the (former) European section of Leopoldville
Brazzaville	the city of Brazzaville
California	California
CEGEÁC	C.E.G.E.A.C., a new-car dealer th that imports American-made cars

LINGALA

Coq	the city of Coquilhatville
Desémbe (decembre)	December
Fevlié (février)	February
Kimwénza	Kimwenza
Kinsásá	Leopoldville; the original settlement, now only a part of Leopoldville
Kisangani	the city of Stanleyville
Kongó	Congo
Leó	the city of Leopoldville
Máí (mai)	May
Málasí (mars)	March
Marénsa	the city of Marenza
Matádi	the city of Matadi
'Michel'	Michel
Mónika (Monique)	Monique
Stanley	Sir Henry Morton Stanley
Novémbe (novembre)	November
Okotóbe (octobre)	October
'Pierre'	Pierre
Pólo (Paul)	Paul
Mpótó, Mpútú (Portugal)	Europe
Setémbe, Setémbele (septembre)	September
Yúli (juillet)	July
Yúni (juin)	June
Zavié (janvier)	January
Zóla, Zolá	Zola (proper name)